

# Geometric Positivity of the Fusion Products of Unitary Vertex Operator Algebra Modules

BIN GUI

## Abstract

A unitary and strongly rational vertex operator algebra (VOA)  $\mathbb{V}$  is called strongly unitary if all irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules are unitarizable. A strongly unitary VOA  $\mathbb{V}$  is called completely unitary if for each unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  the canonical non-degenerate Hermitian form on the fusion product  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is positive. It is known that if  $\mathbb{V}$  is completely unitary, then the modular category  $\text{Mod}^u(\mathbb{V})$  of unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules is unitary [Gui19b], and all simple VOA extensions of  $\mathbb{V}$  are automatically unitary and moreover completely unitary [Gui22, CGGH23].

In this paper, we give a geometric characterization of the positivity of the Hermitian product on  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$ , which helps us prove that the positivity is always true when  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is an irreducible and unitarizable  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. We give several applications: (1) We show that if  $\mathbb{V}$  is a unitary (strongly rational) holomorphic VOA with a finite cyclic unitary automorphism group  $G$ , and if  $\mathbb{V}^G$  is strongly unitary, then  $\mathbb{V}^G$  is completely unitary. This result applies to the cyclic permutation orbifolds of unitary holomorphic VOAs. (2) We show that if  $\mathbb{V}$  is unitary and strongly rational, and if  $\mathbb{U}$  is a simple current extension which is unitarizable as a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module, then  $\mathbb{U}$  is a unitary VOA.

## Contents

0	Introduction	2
1	VOA modules and change of coordinates	8
2	Introduction to conformal blocks	13
3	Sewing conformal blocks	22
4	Unitary VOA modules and conjugate conformal blocks	26
5	Reflection positive conformal blocks	29
6	Positive trinions and basic conformal blocks	36
7	Geometric positivity of fusion products	42
8	Equivalence to the algebraic positivity of fusion products	49

9	Proof of Theorem 8.3	54
10	Application to orbifold VOAs	58
11	Application to simple current extensions	62
	Index	65
	References	66

## 0 Introduction

Let  $\mathbb{V}$  be a vertex operator algebra (VOA). Suppose that  $\mathbb{V}$  is strong rational, i.e. CFT-type, self-dual,  $C_2$ -cofinite, and rational. Then the category of  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules  $\text{Mod}(\mathbb{V})$  is a modular tensor category [Hua08]. Suppose that  $\mathbb{V}$  is also unitary [DL14, CKLW18]. Then it is conjectured that all irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules are unitarizable, and that the modular tensor category  $\text{Mod}^u(\mathbb{V})$  of unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules is unitary, which means among other things that the associativity isomorphisms and the braiding isomorphisms are unitary. As pointed out in [Kir98], understanding the unitarity of  $\text{Mod}^u(\mathbb{V})$  is closely related to the problem of proving the (projective) unitarity of the connections on conformal block bundles over the moduli spaces of compact Riemann surfaces. The study of this problem has attracted algebraic geometers due to its connection with Hodge theory [Ram09, Loo09, Bel12, Loo21]. (See also [BDH17] for an approach to the unitarity of conformal blocks connections from the operator algebraic viewpoint.)

It should be emphasized that the unitary structure on  $\text{Mod}^u(\mathbb{V})$  or on the conformal block bundles should not be an arbitrary one. In other words, one should not be content with proving the existence of a unitary structure. One should also show that this unitary structure is canonical, and that its definition is general and is not based on examples.

In fact, when all  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules are unitarizable (i.e. when  $\mathbb{V}$  is **strongly unitary**), a canonical non-degenerate Hermitian structure on  $\text{Mod}^u(\mathbb{V})$  was introduced by the author in [Gui19b]. This is the correct Hermitian structure in the following sense: suppose that one can show that this Hermitian structure is positive (i.e. unitary, in this case we call  $\mathbb{V}$  **completely unitary**), then there is a 1-1 correspondence between simple unitary VOA extensions of  $\mathbb{V}$  and normalized haploid commutative  $C^*$ -Frobenius algebras with trivial twists in the unitary modular tensor category  $\text{Mod}^u(\mathbb{V})$  [Gui22]. (As one would expect, this correspondence could be generalized to non-local unitary extensions of  $\mathbb{V}$  appearing e.g. in *unitary* boundary conformal field theory, and to *unitary* full conformal field theory.) Based on this fact, Carpi-Gaudio-Giorgetti-Hillier proved in [CGGH23, Thm. 4.7] the remarkable result that *every simple VOA extension of  $\mathbb{V}$  has a unique unitary VOA structure extending that of  $\mathbb{V}$* . For instance, all unitary affine VOAs are completely unitary [Gui19b, Gui19c, Ten19c]. So their simple VOA extensions are unitary.

To summarize, the correct Hermitian structure or even unitary structure on  $\text{Mod}^u(\mathbb{V})$  should be the one that is compatible with the unitary structures of VOA extensions (and more generally, non-local extensions) of  $\mathbb{V}$ .

Let us be more explicit about this canonical Hermitian structure. Let  $\mathbb{V}$  be strongly

unitary. For each unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$ , since the fusion product  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  [HL95a, HL95b, HL95c, Hua95] is unitarizable, we can choose non-degenerate Hermitian products on the multiplicity spaces (which are dual spaces of intertwining operators of  $\mathbb{V}$ ) in the irreducible decomposition of  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$ . If these Hermitian products are positive, then  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is a unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module, and we say that the fusion of  $\mathbb{W}_1$  and  $\mathbb{W}_2$  is **algebraically positive** (cf. Def. 8.1). This gives a fusion bifunctor  $\boxtimes$  of  $\text{Mod}^u(\mathbb{V})$  (but not just of the category  $\text{Mod}(\mathbb{V})$  of  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules). With this bifunctor, the modular tensor category  $\text{Mod}^u(\mathbb{V})$  is unitary [Gui19b]. If the fusion products of all unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules are algebraically positive, then we say that  $\mathbb{V}$  is **completely unitary**.

Many unitary and strongly rational VOAs have already been proved to be completely unitary. Unitary holomorphic VOAs (e.g. moonshine VOA) are clearly completely unitary since they have only one irreducible. The following are completely unitary due to [Gui19b, Gui19c, Ten19c, Gui22, Gui20, CGGH23]:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{Even lattice VOAs, unitary affine VOAs} \\
& \text{Type } A, D, E \text{ discrete series } W\text{-algebras} \\
& \text{(including unitary “minimal model” Virasoro VOAs)} \\
& \text{Parafermion VOAs with positive integer levels} \\
& \text{Their tensor products, VOA extensions, and unitary strongly-rational coset VOAs}
\end{aligned} \tag{0.1}$$

In this list, only even lattice VOAs can be proved completely unitary using purely VOA methods, since the braiding and fusion relations for their intertwining operators are simple (cf. [DL12] or [Gui19c, Sec. A]). The proofs for the other VOAs in this list rely directly or indirectly on methods from operator algebras and especially Jones’ subfactor theory [Jon83].

This paper has three goals. The first one is to study complete unitarity for an important class of strongly unitary VOAs not in the above list: orbifold VOAs. Our ultimate goal is to prove that if  $\mathbb{U}$  is in the above list, if  $G$  is a finite unitary automorphism group of  $\mathbb{U}$ , then  $\mathbb{U}^G$  is completely unitary. In this paper, we make the first step toward this goal by proving that  $\mathbb{U}^G$  is completely unitary if  $\mathbb{U}$  is unitary and holomorphic,  $G$  is cyclic, and  $\mathbb{U}^G$  is strongly unitary. In this case, although all irreducible modules of  $\mathbb{U}^G$  are simple currents, the proof of complete unitarity is not easy and requires a completely new way of thinking: we need a geometric understanding of algebraic positivity and the canonical Hermitian structure on  $\text{Mod}^u(\mathbb{V})$ .

This leads to the second goal of our paper: we define a notion of **geometric positivity** for the fusion product  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  (cf. Def. 7.1) and show that it is equivalent to the algebraic positivity mentioned above (cf. Thm. 8.3 and Cor. 8.4). Recall that the algebraic positivity denotes the positivity of certain Hermitian products on the multiplicity spaces in the irreducible decomposition of  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$ . These Hermitian products are defined using certain fusion matrices for intertwining operators (called transport matrices in [Gui19b]), see (8.8). Advantages of this definition are that it can be easily adapted to the tensor category framework, and that it can be related to Connes fusion product for bimodules of von Neumann algebras [Con94, Sau83]. (Indeed, for many of the VOAs in the above list, the proof of complete unitarity follows the line laid out by Wassermann [Was98] by comparing VOA fusion with Connes fusion.) An obvious drawback, however, is that this

definition does not even heuristically give a geometric explanation (in the spirit of Segal CFT [Seg04]) of why that Hermitian form is expected to be positive.

To be sure, the fusion relations for intertwining operators, also called operator product expansions in physics literature, have a clear geometric picture in terms of sewing and factorization of Riemann spheres [HL95a, HL95b, HL95c, Hua95]. But this geometric picture is *incompatible with the complex-conjugate structures of Riemann surfaces*. For instance, the iterate of intertwining operators  $\mathcal{Y}(\mathcal{Y}(w_1, z_1 - z_2)w_2, z_2)$  (where  $0 < |z_1 - z_2| < |z_2|$ ) corresponds to the sewing of a 3-pointed sphere  $\mathfrak{P}_1 = (\mathbb{P}^1; 0, z_1 - z_2, \infty; \zeta, \zeta - z_1 + z_2, 1/\zeta)$  (where  $0, z_1 - z_2, \infty$  are marked points, the last three terms are local coordinates,  $\zeta$  is the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ ) with another one  $\mathfrak{P}_2 = (\mathbb{P}^1; 0, z_2, \infty; \zeta, \zeta - z_2, 1/\zeta)$  along the points  $\infty \in \mathfrak{P}_1$  and  $z_2 \in \mathfrak{P}_2$  using their chosen local coordinates. (See Def. 3.2 for details.) Neither  $\mathfrak{P}_1$  nor  $\mathfrak{P}_2$  is symmetric with respect to the reflection  $z \in \mathbb{P}^1 \mapsto 1/\bar{z}$ .

Instead of using the usual fusion relations for intertwining operators, we consider the following construction. Let  $\zeta$  be the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ . Choose unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$ . Let  $\mathbb{W}'_i$  be the contragredient of  $\mathbb{W}_i$ . Then there is an antiunitary map  $\mathbb{C} : \mathbb{W}_i \rightarrow \mathbb{W}'_i, \mathbb{C}w_i = \langle \cdot | w_i \rangle$ . Define linear map

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_q : \mathbb{W}'_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2 &\rightarrow \mathbb{C}[[q]] \\ \mathbb{C}m \otimes w \otimes \tilde{w} \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{m} &\mapsto \langle Y(2^{L_0}e^{-iL_1}q^{L_0} -, \mathbf{i})\mathbb{C}m | \mathbb{C}w \rangle \cdot \overline{\langle Y(2^{L_0}e^{-iL_1} -, \mathbf{i})\tilde{w} | \tilde{m} \rangle} \end{aligned}$$

where the contraction is over a homogeneous orthonormal basis of  $\mathbb{V}$ . This series of  $q$  actually converges absolutely on  $|q| < 1$ . When  $0 < q < 1$ , this expression is the conformal block (i.e. chiral correlation function) associated to  $\mathfrak{P}_1 \#_q \mathfrak{P}_2$ , the sewing of

$$\mathfrak{P}_1 = \mathfrak{P}_2 = \left( \mathbb{P}^1; 0, \infty, \mathbf{i}; \zeta, 1/\zeta, \varpi = \frac{\mathbf{i}(\zeta - \mathbf{i})}{\zeta + \mathbf{i}} \right)$$

along  $\mathbf{i} \in \mathfrak{P}_1$  and  $\mathbf{i} \in \mathfrak{P}_2$  by removing small discs and gluing small annuli around these two points by identifying  $x \in \mathfrak{P}_1$  and  $y \in \mathfrak{P}_2$  via the relation  $\varpi(x) \cdot \varpi(y) = q$ . (See again Def. 3.2 for details of the sewing construction.)  $2^{L_0}e^{-iL_1}$  is the change-of-coordinate operator from the standard one  $\zeta - \mathbf{i}$  to  $\varpi$ .  $\mathfrak{P}_1$  and  $\mathfrak{P}_2$  are symmetric with respect to the conjugate structure  $z \mapsto 1/\bar{z}$ . They are examples of **positive trinions**, cf. Def. 6.7. Then the linear functional

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \mathfrak{P}_2} : \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2 \otimes \mathbb{V} &\mapsto \mathbb{C} \\ \tilde{w} \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{m} \otimes v &\mapsto \langle Y(2^{L_0}e^{-iL_1}v, \mathbf{i})\tilde{w} | \tilde{m} \rangle \end{aligned}$$

is a conformal blocks associated to  $\mathfrak{P}_2$ , called **basic conformal block**, cf. Thm. 6.10-(a).

The deepest part of this paper is the theorem that if  $\mathbb{V}$  is a unitary and strongly-rational VOA, if  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  are unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules, and if  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is a unitarizable  $\mathbb{V}$ -module, then the algebraic positivity is equivalent to the geometric positivity of the fusion product  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  (cf. Thm. 8.3 and Cor. 8.4). By saying that  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is **geometrically positive**, we mean that for some  $0 < q < 1$

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k,l=1}^n \phi_q(\mathbb{C}w_l \otimes w_k \otimes \tilde{w}_k \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_l) &\geq 0 \\ (\forall n \in \mathbb{Z}_+, w_1, \dots, w_n \in \mathbb{W}_1, \tilde{w}_1, \dots, \tilde{w}_n \in \mathbb{W}_2) \end{aligned} \tag{0.2}$$

See Def. 7.1. Indeed, it can be shown that if (0.2) holds for some  $0 < q < 1$ , then it holds for all  $0 < q < 1$ . See Lem. 7.2.

Now assume that  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  are simple currents. Then one can show that the geometric positivity (and hence the algebraic positivity) of  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  is always true (cf. Thm. 8.6). The idea is simple: suppose that  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is not algebraically positive. Then it must be algebraically (and hence geometrically) negative because  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is an irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. So for each non-zero  $w \in \mathbb{W}_1, \tilde{w} \in \mathbb{W}_2$  and each  $0 < q < 1$  we have

$$\phi_q(\mathbb{C}w \otimes w \otimes \tilde{w} \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}) \leq 0.$$

Let  $q \rightarrow 0$ . Then the LHS above converges to  $\langle w|w \rangle \cdot \langle \tilde{w}|\tilde{w} \rangle > 0$  by the definition of  $\phi_q$ , which is impossible. This argument has a clear geometric picture: when  $q \rightarrow 0$ , the sewn sphere  $\mathfrak{P}_1 \#_q \mathfrak{P}_2$  “converges” to the one-point union of  $\mathfrak{P}_1$  and  $\mathfrak{P}_2$  along  $\mathbf{i} \in \mathfrak{P}_1$  and  $\mathbf{i} \in \mathfrak{P}_2$ . And the geometric positivity is easy to prove on this “degenerate Riemann surface” (called *nodal curve* by algebraic geometers). This picture of “going to the boundary of moduli space” is well-known to algebraic geometers.

This result has some immediate consequences. Let  $\mathbb{V} = \mathbb{U}^G$  where  $\mathbb{U}$  is a unitary (strongly-rational and) holomorphic VOA and  $G$  is a finite cyclic unitary automorphism group of  $\mathbb{U}$ . Assume that all  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules are strongly unitary. Then, since all irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules are simple currents (by [vEMS20]), we conclude that  $\mathbb{V}$  is completely unitary. Therefore, by [CGGH23], all simple VOA extensions of  $\mathbb{V}$  are unitary (cf. Thm. 10.4). Indeed, one can prove the unitarity of simple current extensions without assuming that the larger VOA is holomorphic: Let  $\mathbb{V}$  be a unitary strongly-rational VOA, and let  $\mathbb{U}$  be a simple current extension of  $\mathbb{V}$ . Then the irreducible unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -submodules of  $\mathbb{U}$  are closed under  $\boxtimes$  and contragredient (up to isomorphisms), and hence their direct sums form a fusion category  $\mathcal{C}$  which is unitary by the geometric and algebraic positivity of fusion of objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ . By [CGGH23], every Haploid rigid algebra in  $\mathcal{C}$  is unitary. So  $\mathbb{U}$  is a unitary VOA extension of  $\mathbb{V}$ . See Thm. 11.5.

As mentioned earlier, the theorem that algebraic positivity is equivalent to geometric positivity constitutes the deepest part of this paper. The difficulty of its proof lies in the fact that the local coordinates chosen for the sphere when dealing with algebraic positivity (i.e. the standard coordinate  $\zeta$  of  $\mathbb{C}$ , its translation  $\zeta - z$ , and  $1/\zeta$ ) are very different from those when dealing with geometric positivity (e.g.  $\varpi = \frac{i(\zeta-i)}{\zeta+i}$ ). It turns out that the language of intertwining operators as developed in [FHL93] is not very convenient for proving this theorem. We need a more geometric language, namely, the language of **conformal blocks** for VOAs as developed in [Zhu94, FB04].

Intertwining operators are special cases of conformal blocks. An intertwining operator at  $z \in \mathbb{C}^\times$  is a conformal block associated to the 3-pointed sphere  $(\mathbb{P}^1; 0, z, \infty; \zeta, \zeta - z, 1/\zeta)$  with local coordinates  $\zeta, \zeta - z, 1/\zeta$ . On the other hand, any conformal block associated to a 3-pointed sphere with arbitrary local coordinates can be expressed in terms of intertwining operators and Huang’s change-of-coordinate operators [Hua97]. (See Subsec. 1.2 for details.) Thus, at least for 3-pointed spheres, intertwining operators and conformal blocks are equivalent. The main difference between these two languages is the difference of pictures: Intertwining operators are thought first of all as *operators*. Thus, as generalizations of vertex operators, they can be added and multiplied to form a “generalized algebra”. In this picture, people often ask what are the correct *algebraic relations* between

an intertwining operator and an intertwining operator, a vertex operator, or (exponentials of) some Virasoro operators. On the other hand, conformal blocks are thought of as morphisms in the cobordism category of chiral conformal field theory in the sense of Segal [Seg04]. In this picture, one often thinks about the extent to which the underlying geometry of Riemann surfaces determines the conformal blocks. Thus, algebraic relations in the previous picture is replaced by uniqueness properties in this picture. Such uniqueness arguments are used extensively in this paper and especially in the proof of the equivalence of the two positivities (see e.g. Prop. 6.12 or Lem. 9.4), and is much simpler than dealing with the algebraic relations of intertwining operators for the purpose of this paper.

This brings us to the third goal of this paper: we want to introduce the mathematical theory of conformal blocks to those working on vertex operator algebras, in particular to those studying problems related to the tensor categories of VOA modules. (This is also part of the goal of the lecture notes [Gui23b], and we refer the readers to [Gui23b] for a more detailed explanation of the motivations of conformal blocks from the perspective of Segal CFT.) To date, conformal blocks still do not seem to be very popular among vertex algebraists. Possible reasons are that in the literature conformal blocks are usually written in the difficult language of algebraic geometry, and that interest in conformal blocks has long been closely linked to problems rooted in the discipline of algebraic geometry. In my opinion, it is certainly not true that in order to understand conformal blocks one must first comprehend the theory of schemes, stacks, and  $D$ -modules. As we will see in this paper and in [Gui23b], those with some basic knowledge in complex differential manifolds and holomorphic vector bundles can understand many of the key ideas in conformal blocks. Especially, in Sec. 2, we introduce the notion of conformal blocks by comparing it with familiar concepts such as intertwining operators and Li's vacuum-like vectors [Li94]; products and iterates of intertwining operators are typical examples of sewing conformal blocks, as recalled in Sec. 3. We hope that this paper will convince more people that conformal blocks are a powerful tool in the study of VOAs and their representation theory, and that conformal blocks are not something to be feared.

We close this introduction by discussing some possible future directions. As mentioned earlier, it is proved in this paper (Thm. 10.4) that  $\mathbb{V}^G$  is completely unitary if  $\mathbb{V}$  is unitary and holomorphic,  $G$  is cyclic, and all  $\mathbb{V}^G$ -modules are unitarizable. It is expected that this theorem can be generalized to an arbitrary finite unitary automorphism group  $G$  by generalizing Thm. 8.6 to twisted simple currents, i.e. by proving that if  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  are  $G$ -twisted unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules and if  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is an irreducible unitarizable  $G$ -twisted  $\mathbb{V}$ -module, then the fusion  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is algebraically positive. To prove such a result one must first develop suitable results about conformal blocks for twisted modules.

Furthermore, we wish to weaken the assumption that  $\mathbb{V}$  is holomorphic, and prove that for every  $\mathbb{V}$  in the list (0.1) and for every unitary finite automorphism group  $G$ , if  $\mathbb{V}^G$  is  $C_2$ -cofinite (and hence completely rational by [McR21])<sup>1</sup>, then  $\mathbb{V}^G$  is also completely unitary. Moreover, we wish to prove as in [Gui20] that  $\text{Mod}^u(\mathbb{V}^G)$  is unitarily equivalent to the braided tensor category of semisimple modules of  $\mathcal{A}_{\mathbb{V}^G}$  (where  $\mathcal{A}_{\mathbb{V}^G}$  is the conformal net associated to  $\mathbb{V}^G$  via the construction of Carpi-Kawahigashi-Longo-Weiner [CKLW18] or Tener [Ten19a]) via the  $*$ -functor of “strong-integrability” by Carpi-Weiner-

---

<sup>1</sup>It is expected that  $\mathbb{V}^G$  is automatically strongly rational. This is a theorem when  $G$  is solvable [Miy15, CM16].



Xu [CWX] or the one by Tener [Ten19b]. Of course, this is a difficult task. We hope that the methods and the results in [Gui19c, Ten19c, Gui20, CGGH23, CT23] are helpful for the study of this problem.

Thus, the present paper can be viewed as the first of our project to study the complete unitarity of orbifold VOAs and to compare their representation categories with those of conformal nets.

## Acknowledgment

I would like to thank Angela Gibney for inspiring me to think about the geometric interpretation (in terms of conformal blocks) of the Hermitian/inner products on the spaces of intertwining operators defined in [Gui19b]. I want to thank Florencia Orosz Hunziker for inviting me to give a talk at the *Rocky Mountain Representation Theory Seminar* in the spring of 2021. I came up with the definition of geometric positivity (Def. 7.1) when preparing for this talk. I also want to express my gratitude to Robert McRae and Yilong Wang for answering my questions about orbifold VOAs and their representation categories. I thank Ching Hung Lam for answering my questions about unitary twisted modules of lattice VOAs.

## Notations

$\mathbb{N} = \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ ,  $\mathbb{Z}_+ = \{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ .  $\mathbb{C} = \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\}$ .  $\mathbb{P}^1 = \mathbb{C} \cup \{\infty\}$ .

Unless otherwise stated, all neighborhoods are open. The closure of a subset  $A$  in a topological space is denoted by  $A^{\text{cl}}$ .

If  $0 \leq r < R \leq +\infty$  then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{D}_r &= \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z| < r\} & \overline{\mathbb{D}}_r &= \mathbb{D}_r^{\text{cl}} = \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z| \leq r\} \\ \mathbb{D}_r^\times &= \mathbb{D}_r \setminus \{0\} & \mathbb{A}_{r,R} &= \{z \in \mathbb{C} : r < |z| < R\} \end{aligned} \quad (0.3)$$

All vector spaces are over  $\mathbb{C}$ . If  $W$  is a vector space and  $z$  is a formal variable, we let

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{W}[z^{\pm 1}] &= \mathbb{W}[z, z^{-1}] = \left\{ \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z} \cap [-N, N]} w_n z^n : N \in \mathbb{Z}_+, w_n \in W \text{ (for all } n) \right\} \\ W[[z]] &= \left\{ \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} w_n z^n : w_n \in W \text{ (for all } n) \right\} \\ W((z)) &= \left\{ \sum_{n \in m + \mathbb{N}} w_n z^n : m \in \mathbb{Z}, w_n \in W \text{ (for all } n) \right\} \end{aligned}$$

Riemann surfaces are not assumed to be connected. If  $C$  is a Riemann surface, then  $\mathcal{O}(C)$  denotes the space of holomorphic functions  $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ . We let  $\mathcal{O}_C$  denote the trivial rank 1 holomorphic vector bundle on  $C$ . If  $\mathcal{E}$  is a holomorphic vector bundle on  $X$ , then we write

$$\mathcal{E}(C) \equiv H^0(C, \mathcal{E}) := \{\text{The space of global holomorphic sections of } \mathcal{E} \text{ on } C\}. \quad (0.4)$$

According to this notation,  $\mathcal{O}_C(C) = \mathcal{O}(C)$ . More generally, if  $\{x_1, x_2, \dots\}$  is a discrete subset of  $X$ , we define

$$\begin{aligned} H^0(C, \mathcal{E}(\star x_\bullet)) &= H^0(C, \mathcal{E}(\star x_1 + \dots + \star x_N)) \\ &= \{\text{The space of global meromorphic sections of } \mathcal{E} \text{ whose poles are inside } \{x_1, x_2, \dots\}\}. \end{aligned} \quad (0.5)$$

If  $W$  is a vector space, then  $W \otimes_{\mathbb{C}} \mathcal{O}_C$  (or simply  $W \otimes \mathcal{O}_C$ ) denotes the trivial vector bundle whose fibers are equivalent to  $W$ . If  $\mathcal{F}$  is another holomorphic vector bundle, then

$$\mathcal{E} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_C} \mathcal{F} \equiv \mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{F}$$

denotes their tensor product. (Namely, the fibers (resp. transition functions) of  $\mathcal{E} \otimes \mathcal{F}$  are equivalent to the tensor product over  $\mathbb{C}$  of those of  $\mathcal{E}$  and  $\mathcal{F}$ .)

Unless otherwise stated, a vector bundle on a Riemann surface  $C$  means a holomorphic vector bundle.

We let  $\omega_C$  denote the holomorphic cotangent bundle. So if  $U \subset C$  is open and  $\eta \in \mathcal{O}(U)$  is a holomorphic coordinate, then elements of  $\omega_C(U)$  are of the form  $f d\eta$  where  $f \in \mathcal{O}(U)$ . If  $\mu$  is another coordinate, then  $f d\eta = f \partial_\mu \eta \cdot d\eta$ . According to the above notations,

$$\begin{aligned} H^0(C, \mathcal{E} \otimes \omega_C(\star x_\bullet)) &= \{\text{The space of global meromorphic 1-forms on } C \\ &\quad \text{with coefficients in } \mathcal{E} \text{ and poles in } \{x_1, x_2, \dots\}\} \end{aligned} \quad (0.6)$$

whose elements are locally of the form  $\varsigma d\eta$  where  $\eta$  is a holomorphic coordinate and  $\varsigma$  is a meromorphic section of  $\mathcal{E}$ .

## 1 VOA modules and change of coordinates

### 1.1 VOAs and their modules

Throughout this article, a vertex operator algebra (VOA)  $\mathbb{V} = \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \mathbb{V}(n)$  is assumed to be  $\mathbb{N}$ -graded with conformal vector  $\mathbf{c}$  and vacuum vector  $\mathbf{1}$  satisfying  $\dim \mathbb{V}(n) < +\infty$  for all  $n$ . If  $v \in \mathbb{V}$ , we write the vertex operator as

$$Y(v, z) = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} Y(v)_n z^{-n-1}$$

$L_n := Y(\mathbf{c})_{n+1}$  denotes the Virasoro operators. Recall that  $\mathbb{V}$  is called of **CFT-type** if  $\mathbb{V}(0) = \mathbb{C}\mathbf{1}$ . Recall that  $\mathbb{V}$  is called  **$C_2$ -cofinite** if  $\text{Span}_{\mathbb{C}}\{Y(u)_{-2}v : u, v\}$  has finite codimension in  $\mathbb{V}$ .

A  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}$  in our article always means an **ordinary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module**. As above, we write the vertex operators as

$$Y_{\mathbb{W}}(v, z) = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} Y_{\mathbb{W}}(v)_n z^{-n-1}$$

and abbreviate  $Y_{\mathbb{W}}$  to  $Y$  when the context is clear. We also write  $Y_{\mathbb{W}}(\mathbf{c})_{n+1}$  as  $L_n$ . By saying that  $\mathbb{W}$  is an ordinary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module, we mean that  $\mathbb{W}$  is a weak  $\mathbb{V}$ -module in the sense of



[DLM97, Sec. 2], and that  $L_0$  is diagonal on  $\mathbb{W}$  such that the  $L_0$ -eigenspace decomposition of  $\mathbb{W}$  takes the form

$$\mathbb{W} = \bigoplus_{s \in \mathbb{N} + E} \mathbb{W}_{(s)} \quad (\dim \mathbb{W}_{(s)} < +\infty) \quad (1.1)$$

where  $E$  is a *finite* subset of  $\mathbb{C}$  such that any two elements of  $E$  do not differ by an integer.

**Definition 1.1.** We say that  $\mathbb{W}$  is  $L_0$ -**simple** if  $E$  consists of a single element. For instance, if  $\mathbb{W}$  is **simple** (also called **irreducible**, which means that 0 and  $\mathbb{W}$  are the only subspaces of  $\mathbb{W}$  invariant under the action of  $\mathbb{V}$ ), then  $\mathbb{W}$  is  $L_0$ -simple.

**Definition 1.2.** We say that a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}$  is **finitely generated** if it is generated by finitely many elements  $w_1, \dots, w_n$  (i.e., the smallest subspace invariant under  $Y(v)_n$  (for all  $v \in \mathbb{V}, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ ) which contains  $w_1, \dots, w_n$  is  $\mathbb{W}$ ). We say that  $\mathbb{W}$  is **semisimple** if it is a *finite* direct sum of irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules.

**Remark 1.3.** Let  $\mathbb{M}$  be a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. If  $\mathbb{M}$  is irreducible, then  $\text{End}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{W}) = 1$  by a Schur's lemma type argument (i.e., if  $A \in \text{End}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{W})$ , then for some  $s$  such that  $\mathbb{W}_{(s)} \neq 0$ ,  $A|_{\mathbb{W}_{(s)}}$  must have an eigenvalue  $\lambda$ . Then  $\text{Ker}(A - \lambda)$  must be  $\mathbb{W}$ ). Conversely, if  $\text{End}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{W}) = 1$  and if  $\mathbb{W}$  is completely reducible, then  $\mathbb{W}$  is clearly irreducible.

**Remark 1.4.** Semisimple  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules are clearly finitely-generated since irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules are so. Also, by [Hua09, Cor 3.16], if  $\mathbb{V}$  is  $C_2$ -cofinite then any  $\mathbb{V}$ -module (as defined in this article) is finitely-generated.

**Remark 1.5.** Each  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}$  is a direct sum of  $L_0$ -simple modules. (Indeed, if we assume (1.1), then  $\mathbb{W}$  has decomposition  $\mathbb{W} = \bigoplus_{\lambda \in E} \mathbb{W}_{\lambda}$  where each  $\mathbb{W}_{\lambda} = \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \mathbb{W}_{(n+\lambda)}$  is a submodule.) Therefore, one can often assume for simplicity that  $\mathbb{W}$  is  $L_0$ -simple.

The above  $E$  is uniquely determined if we assume moreover that

$$\dim \mathbb{W}_{(\lambda)} > 0 \quad (\forall \lambda \in E)$$

Define a diagonal operator  $\tilde{L}_0$  (the **normalized conformal Hamiltonian**) as

$$\tilde{L}_0|_{\mathbb{W}_{(n+\lambda)}} = n \quad (\forall \lambda \in E)$$

Then  $\tilde{L}_0 - L_0$  commutes with every  $Y_{\mathbb{W}}(v)_n$ . Set  $\mathbb{W}(n) = \mathbb{W}_{(n+\lambda)}$  if  $\lambda \in E$ . Then  $\tilde{L}_0$  gives an  $\mathbb{N}$ -grading

$$\mathbb{W} = \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \mathbb{W}(n).$$

**Remark 1.6.** By the above convention,  $\tilde{L}_0$  and  $L_0$  agree on  $\mathbb{V}$ . Namely,

$$\mathbb{V}(n) = \mathbb{V}_{(n)}.$$

More generally, if  $\mathbb{W}$  is  $L_0$ -simple, then  $\tilde{L}_0 - L_0$  is a constant.

It is then clear that  $\tilde{L}_0$  gives  $\mathbb{W}$  an admissible  $\mathbb{V}$ -module structure, which means that for each  $v \in \mathbb{V}, n \in \mathbb{Z}$  we have

$$[\tilde{L}_0, Y(v)_n] = Y(L_0 v)_n - (n+1)Y(v)_n.$$

because a similar relation holds for  $L_0$  instead of  $\tilde{L}_0$ , and because  $\tilde{L}_0 - L_0$  commutes with  $Y(v)_n$ . Since clearly

$$\dim \mathbb{W}(n) < +\infty \quad (\forall n \in \mathbb{N}),$$

$\mathbb{W}$  is better called a **finitely admissible  $\mathbb{V}$ -module**, as in [Gui23a].

Recall that the **contragredient module**  $\mathbb{W}'$  of a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}$  is described as follows. As a vector space,

$$\mathbb{W}' = \bigoplus_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \mathbb{W}(n)^* = \bigoplus_{s \in \mathbb{C}} \mathbb{W}_{(s)}^*$$

where  $\mathbb{W}(n)^*$  and  $\mathbb{W}_{(s)}^*$  are respectively the dual spaces of  $\mathbb{W}(n)$  and  $\mathbb{W}_{(s)}$ . For each  $v \in \mathbb{V}$ , set

$$Y'_{\mathbb{W}}(v, z) = Y_{\mathbb{W}}(\mathcal{U}(\vartheta_z)v, z^{-1}) = Y_{\mathbb{W}}(e^{zL_1}(-z^{-2})^{L_0}v, z^{-1}). \quad (1.2)$$

(See Exp. 2.1 for the reason of setting  $\mathcal{U}(\vartheta_z) = e^{zL_1}(-z^{-2})^{L_0}$ .) Then for each  $w \in \mathbb{W}, w' \in \mathbb{W}', v \in \mathbb{V}$ , we have (in  $\mathbb{C}[z^{\pm 1}]$ )

$$\langle w, Y_{\mathbb{W}'}(v, z)w' \rangle = \langle Y'_{\mathbb{W}}(v, z)w, w' \rangle \quad (1.3)$$

where  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  stands for the standard pairing between  $\mathbb{W}$  and  $\mathbb{W}'$ . Clearly  $\mathbb{W}'' = \mathbb{W}$ . Setting

$$Y'_{\mathbb{W}}(v)_n = \text{Res}_{z=0} Y'(v, z)z^n dz$$

then (1.3) means that  $Y_{\mathbb{W}'}(v)_n$  is the transpose of  $Y'_{\mathbb{W}}(v)_n$ :

$$\langle w, Y_{\mathbb{W}'}(v)_n w' \rangle = \langle Y'_{\mathbb{W}}(v)_n w, w' \rangle. \quad (1.4)$$

**Remark 1.7.** Clearly, a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}$  is irreducible if and only if its contragredient  $\mathbb{W}'$  is irreducible. Indeed, if  $\mathbb{W}$  has a proper submodule  $\mathbb{M}$ , then  $\{w' \in \mathbb{W}' : \langle w', \mathbb{M} \rangle = 0\}$  is a proper submodule.

**Definition 1.8.** We call  $\mathbb{V}$  **self-dual** and write  $\mathbb{V} \simeq \mathbb{V}'$  if  $\mathbb{V}$  is isomorphic to  $\mathbb{V}'$  as a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. We call  $\mathbb{V}$  a **simple VOA** if it is irreducible as a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module.

**Remark 1.9.** If  $\mathbb{V}$  is self-dual, then  $\dim \text{End}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{V}) \leq \dim \mathbb{V}(0)$  by Exp. 2.13. Thus  $\mathbb{V}$  is simple if  $\mathbb{V}$  is of CFT-type.

The algebraic completion  $\overline{\mathbb{W}}$  is defined to be

$$\overline{\mathbb{W}} = (\mathbb{W}')^* = \prod_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \mathbb{W}(n) = \prod_{s \in \mathbb{C}} \mathbb{W}_{(s)}.$$

The action of  $Y_{\mathbb{W}}(v)_n$  on  $\mathbb{W}$  extends naturally to that of  $\overline{\mathbb{W}}$ .

## 1.2 Change of coordinates

The advantage of  $\tilde{L}_0$  over  $L_0$  is that the change of coordinate operator defined by  $\tilde{L}_0$  is a group homomorphism. The group we consider here is  $\mathbb{G}$ , the subset of

$$\mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{C},0} = \left\{ f(z) = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} a_n z^n \in \mathbb{C}[[z]] : \sum_n |a_n| r^n < +\infty \text{ for some } r > 0 \right\}$$

defined by

$$\mathbb{G} = \{ \rho \in \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{C},0} : \rho(0) = 0, \rho'(0) \neq 0 \} = \left\{ \sum_n a_n z^n \in \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{C},0} : a_0 = 0, a_1 \neq 0 \right\}.$$

The group multiplication of  $\rho_1, \rho_2 \in \mathbb{G}$  is their composition  $\rho_1 \circ \rho_2$ .

The change of coordinate operators were introduced by Huang in [Hua97]. They are defined as follows. For each  $\rho \in \mathbb{G}$ , we can find  $c_1, c_2, \dots \in \mathbb{C}$  such that

$$\rho(z) = \rho'(0) \cdot \exp \left( \sum_{n>0} c_n z^{n+1} \partial_z \right) z = \rho'(0) \cdot \sum_{k \in \mathbb{N}} \frac{1}{k!} \left( \sum_{n>0} c_n z^{n+1} \partial_z \right)^k (z)$$

Then we set

$$\mathcal{U}(\rho) = \rho'(0)^{\tilde{L}_0} \exp \left( \sum_{n>0} c_n L_n \right) \quad (1.5a)$$

$$\mathcal{U}_0(\rho) = \rho'(0)^{L_0} \exp \left( \sum_{n>0} c_n L_n \right) \quad (1.5b)$$

Note that  $\mathcal{U}_0(\rho)$  depends on the choice of the **argument**  $\arg c_0$ , but  $\mathcal{U}(\rho)$  does not. Also, if  $\mathbb{W}$  is  $L_0$ -simple,  $\mathcal{U}_0(\rho)$  equals a non-zero constant times  $\mathcal{U}(\rho)$ . And  $\mathcal{U}(\rho)$  agrees with  $\mathcal{U}_0(\rho)$  on  $\mathbb{V}$ .

**Remark 1.10.** Although the definitions of  $\mathcal{U}(\rho)$  and  $\mathcal{U}_0(\rho)$  involve infinite sums, there is actually no convergence issue. Consider

$$\mathbb{W}^{\leq n} = \bigoplus_{k \leq n} \mathbb{W}(k)$$

which is finite dimensional. Note that

$$[\tilde{L}_0, L_n] = [L_0, L_n] = -nL_n. \quad (1.6)$$

If  $n > 0$ , then each  $L_n$  lowers the  $\tilde{L}_0$ -weights by at least 1, and so  $L_n|_{\mathbb{W}^{\leq n}}$  is a nilpotent operator. (The fact that  $\dim \mathbb{W}^{\leq n} < +\infty$  is not really needed here, but it certainly makes one feel safe because one can do finite-dimensional linear algebra.) So for each  $w \in \mathbb{W}^{\leq n}$ ,  $\mathcal{U}(\rho)w$  is a finite sum. The same can be said about  $\mathcal{U}_0(\rho)w$  since, when  $\mathbb{W}$  is  $L_0$ -semisimple, we have  $\mathcal{U}_0(\rho)w = \lambda \mathcal{U}(\rho)w$  for some  $\lambda \neq 0$ .

**Example 1.11.** Let  $\tau \in \mathbb{C}$ . Since  $(z^2 \partial_z)^n(z) = n! z^{n+1}$ , one has

$$\frac{z}{1 - \tau z} = \exp(\tau z^2 \partial_z) z.$$

Therefore, if  $\rho(z) = z/(1 - \tau z)$ , then  $\mathcal{U}(\rho) = \mathcal{U}_0(\rho) = e^{\tau L_1}$ .

In general, if  $\rho \in \mathbb{G}$  is a Möbius transformation, then one can find  $\lambda \neq 0$  and  $\tau$  such that  $\alpha(z) = \frac{\lambda z}{1 - \tau z}$ . Then the expression  $\mathcal{U}_0(\rho) = \lambda^{L_0} e^{\tau L_1}$  includes only  $L_0, L_1$  among all Virasoro operators.

The following two fundamental facts are due to [Hua97]. (See also [FB04, Chapter 6]) They were originally stated in the special case that  $\mathbb{W} = \mathbb{V}$ , but the proofs also apply to the general case. (See for instance [Gui23b, Sec. 10].)

**Theorem 1.12** ([Hua97, Sec. 4.2]).  *$\mathcal{U}$  is a representation of  $\mathbb{G}$  on  $\mathbb{W}$ . Namely,  $\mathcal{U}(\mathbf{1}) = \mathbf{1}$  (here  $\mathbf{1}(z) = z$ ), and  $\mathcal{U}(\alpha \circ \beta) = \mathcal{U}(\alpha) \circ \mathcal{U}(\beta)$  if  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{G}$ . In particular,  $\mathcal{U}(\alpha)$  has inverse  $\mathcal{U}(\alpha^{-1})$ .*

The main idea of the proof that  $\mathcal{U}$  preserves multiplication is simple: If  $\alpha'(0) = \beta'(0) = 1$ , then one applies Campbell-Hausdorff Theorem to the subgroup

$$\mathbb{G}_+ = \{\rho \in \mathbb{R} : \rho'(0) = 1\}$$

(whose Lie algebra is  $\text{Span}_{\mathbb{C}}\{l_n = z^{n+1}\partial_z, n > 0\}$ ). To prove the general case, one appeals to

$$\exp\left(\sum_{n \geq 1} c_n L_n\right) \lambda^{\tilde{L}_0} = \lambda^{\tilde{L}_0} \exp\left(\sum_{n \geq 1} c_n \lambda^n L_n\right) \quad (1.7)$$

which follows from

$$L_n \lambda^{\tilde{L}_0} = \lambda^{\tilde{L}_0 + n} L_n, \quad (1.8)$$

and hence follows from (1.6).

Let  $\alpha \in \mathbb{G}$ . Suppose that  $U \subset \mathbb{C}$  is a neighborhood of 0 on which the power series  $\alpha(t)$  converges absolutely, and  $\alpha'$  vanish nowhere on  $U$ . Then for each  $z \in U$ , we can define an element of  $\mathbb{G}$ :

$$\varrho(\alpha|\mathbf{1})_z(t) = \alpha(z + t) - \alpha(z) \quad (1.9)$$

If we write  $\varrho(\alpha|\mathbf{1})_z(t) = \sum_n a_n(z) t^n$  then each  $a_n$  is holomorphic on  $U$ . Therefore, for each  $w \in \mathbb{W}^{\leq n}$ , the expression  $\mathcal{U}(\varrho(\alpha|\mathbf{1})_z)w$  is a holomorphic  $\mathbb{W}^{\leq n}$ -valued function of  $z$ .

The meaning of the symbol  $\varrho(\alpha|\mathbf{1})$  will be revealed in the next section.

**Theorem 1.13** ([Hua97]). *Let  $\mathbb{W}$  be a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. Let  $\alpha \in \mathbb{G}$ . Then for each  $w \in \mathbb{W}, w' \in \mathbb{W}', v \in \mathbb{V}$ , the following relation holds at the level of  $\mathbb{C}((z))$ :*

$$\langle \mathcal{U}(\alpha) Y_{\mathbb{W}}(v, z) w, w' \rangle = \langle Y_{\mathbb{W}}(\mathcal{U}(\varrho(\alpha|\mathbf{1})_z) v, \alpha(z)) \mathcal{U}(\alpha) w, w' \rangle$$

Instead of using this formula directly, we will only use its consequence, Prop. 2.20.

Finally, we show that  $\mathcal{U}_0$  is a group representation of “the universal cover of  $\mathbb{G}$ ”.

**Corollary 1.14.** *We have  $\mathcal{U}_0(\mathbf{1}) = \mathbf{1}$  if the argument of  $\mathbf{1}'(z) = 1$  is 0. Let  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{G}$ . (Note that  $(\alpha \circ \beta)'(0) = \alpha'(0)\beta'(0)$ .) Then  $\mathcal{U}_0(\alpha \circ \beta) = \mathcal{U}_0(\alpha)\mathcal{U}_0(\beta)$  if the arguments are chosen such that*

$$\arg((\alpha \circ \beta)'(0)) = \arg \alpha'(0) + \arg \beta'(0).$$

*Proof.* It suffices to assume that  $\mathbb{W}$  is  $L_0$ -simple. Then on  $\mathbb{W}$  we have  $L_0 = \tilde{L}_0 + \lambda$  for some  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ . Then we have  $((\alpha \circ \beta)'(0))^\lambda = \alpha'(0)^\lambda \beta'(0)^\lambda$ , and hence, by Thm. 1.12,

$$\mathcal{U}_0(\alpha \circ \beta) = ((\alpha \circ \beta)'(0))^\lambda \mathcal{U}(\alpha \circ \beta) = \alpha'(0)^\lambda \beta'(0)^\lambda \cdot \mathcal{U}(\alpha) \mathcal{U}(\beta) = \mathcal{U}_0(\alpha) \mathcal{U}_0(\beta).$$

□

## 2 Introduction to conformal blocks

In this section, we give a brief introduction to conformal blocks and their major properties. We discuss conformal blocks on arbitrary compact Riemann surfaces in general, but our main interest is in the genus-0 case. (So, for the sake of simplicity, the readers may assume that all the compact Riemann surfaces mentioned in this article are the sphere  $\mathbb{P}^1$  and their disjoint unions.) In this case, conformal blocks can be explicitly written down in terms of VOA intertwining operators (as developed in [FHL93]).

We refer the readers to [FB04] for a detailed account of the theory of VOA conformal blocks. [FB04] uses the language of algebraic geometry. For a complex analytic approach, see [Gui23a] or [Gui23b] (which contains more motivational explanations). Our presentation in this section is elementary: readers with some basic knowledge of (complex) differential manifolds and vector bundles can read this section without difficulty. No knowledge of algebraic geometry or advanced complex geometry is required.

### 2.1 VOA bundles

Let  $C$  be a Riemann surface, and let  $\mathbb{V}$  be a VOA. Our first step is to define a holomorphic vector bundle  $\mathcal{V}_C^{\leq n}$  (for each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ) associated to  $C$  and  $\mathbb{V}$  in terms of its transition functions. Cf. [FB04]. We follow the approach of [Gui23a, Sec. 2] and [Gui23b, Sec. 11].

Let  $U \subset C$  be open, and choose  $\eta \in \mathcal{O}(U)$  to be **univalent**, namely,  $\eta : U \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is a holomorphic injective map, and hence a biholomorphism from  $U$  to  $\eta(U)$ . (More generally, one can choose  $\eta \in \mathcal{O}(U)$  to be locally univalent, which is equivalent to that  $d\eta$  is nowhere zero on  $U$ .) Choose another univalent  $\mu \in \mathcal{O}(U)$ . Then for each  $p \in U$ , we can define an element  $\varrho(\eta|\mu)_p \in \mathbb{G}$  by

$$\eta - \eta(p) = \varrho(\eta|\mu)_p(\mu - \mu(p)). \quad (2.1)$$

Thus, if  $U$  is an open subset of  $\mathbb{C}$  and  $\mu$  is the standard coordinate  $\mathbf{1} : z \mapsto z$ , then the meaning of  $\varrho(\eta|\mu)_p$  agrees with that of  $\varrho(\alpha|\mathbf{1})_z$  defined in (1.9). Moreover, if we vary  $p$  on  $U$ , then the coefficients of the power series  $\eta(\eta|\mu)_p(t)$  of  $t$  varies holomorphically. Therefore, when acting on  $\mathbb{W}^{\leq n}$ ,

$$p \in U \mapsto \mathcal{U}(\varrho(\eta|\mu))_p|_{\mathbb{W}^{\leq n}} \quad \text{is a holomorphic } \text{End}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{W}^{\leq n})\text{-valued function}$$

We simply write this fact as

$$\mathcal{U}(\varrho(\eta|\mu)) \in \text{End}(\mathbb{W}^{\leq n}) \otimes_{\mathbb{C}} \mathcal{O}(U).$$

If  $\nu \in \mathcal{O}(U)$  is univalent, then one easily checks that  $\varrho(\eta|\mu)_p \circ \varrho(\mu|\nu)_p = \varrho(\eta|\nu)_p$ . Thus, from Thm. 1.12 we see that the following cocycle relation holds:

$$\mathcal{U}(\varrho(\eta|\mu))_p \circ \mathcal{U}(\varrho(\mu|\nu))_p = \mathcal{U}(\varrho(\eta|\nu))_p.$$

Thus we may define a holomorphic vector bundle  $\mathcal{V}_C^{\leq n}$  on  $C$  whose fibers are isomorphic to  $\mathbb{W}^{\leq n}$ , and whose transition functions are given by  $\mathcal{U}(\varrho(\eta|\mu))$ .

More precisely,  $\mathcal{V}_C^{\leq n}$  is described as follows. For each open  $U \subset C$  and each univalent  $\eta \in \mathcal{O}(U)$ , there is a trivialization, i.e., an equivalence of vector bundles

$$\mathcal{U}_\eta(\eta) : \mathcal{V}_U^{\leq n} \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathbb{V}^{\leq n} \otimes_{\mathbb{C}} \mathcal{O}_U$$

whose restriction to each open subset  $V \subset U$  equals  $\mathcal{U}_\eta(\eta|_V)$ . If  $\mu \in \mathcal{O}(U)$  is also univalent, then

$$\mathcal{U}_\eta(\eta)\mathcal{U}_\mu(\mu)^{-1} = \mathcal{U}(\eta|\mu) : \mathbb{V}^{\leq n} \otimes \mathcal{O}_U \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathbb{V}^{\leq n} \otimes \mathcal{O}_U \quad (2.2)$$

is the transition function. This defines the **VOA bundle** (also called **sheaf of VOA**)  $\mathcal{V}_C^{\leq n}$ . If  $m \leq n$ , the inclusion map  $\mathbb{V}^{\leq m} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{V}^{\leq n}$  makes  $\mathcal{V}_C^{\leq m}$  naturally a subbundle of  $\mathcal{V}_C^{\leq n}$ . Thus we can take the union  $\mathcal{V}_C := \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \mathcal{V}_C^{\leq n}$ , or more precisely, the direct limit,

$$\mathcal{V}_C := \varinjlim_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \mathcal{V}_C^{\leq n},$$

also called a VOA bundle.

To get an idea of what's really going on in the above definition, let's consider VOA bundles on the sphere  $\mathbb{P}^1$ , our main interest in this article.

**Example 2.1.** Let  $\zeta : z \mapsto z$  be the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{P}^1$ . Then  $\mathbb{P}^1$  can be covered by two charts:  $\mathbb{P}^1 = U \cup V$  where  $U = \mathbb{C}$ ,  $V = \mathbb{P}^1 \setminus \{0\}$ , and  $\zeta \in \mathcal{O}(U)$ ,  $1/\zeta \in \mathcal{O}(V)$  are univalent. For each  $\gamma \in \mathbb{C}^\times = U \cap V$ , we compute

$$\varrho(1/\zeta|\zeta)_\gamma = \varrho(\zeta|1/\zeta)_{1/\gamma} = \vartheta_\gamma \quad (2.3)$$

where

$$\vartheta_\gamma(z) := \frac{1}{\gamma + z} - \frac{1}{\gamma}. \quad (2.4)$$

For each  $\tau \in \mathbb{C}$ , let  $\alpha_\tau(z) = \frac{z}{1-\tau z}$ . Then  $\vartheta_\gamma(z) = \alpha_\gamma(-\gamma^{-2}z) = -\gamma^{-2}\alpha_{-\gamma^{-1}}(z)$ . Then by Exp. 1.11 and Thm. 1.12, we have

$$\mathcal{U}_0(\varrho(1/\zeta|\zeta))_\gamma = \mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_\gamma) = e^{\gamma L_1}(-\gamma^{-2})^{L_0} = (-\gamma^{-2})^{L_0} e^{-\gamma^{-1} L_1} \quad (2.5)$$

which equals  $\mathcal{U}(\varrho(1/\zeta|\zeta))$  on  $\mathbb{V}$ .

$\mathcal{U}(\varrho(1/\zeta|\zeta))$  gives the transition function of  $\mathcal{V}_{\mathbb{P}^1}^{\leq n}$ . More precisely, we have trivializations of (holomorphic) vector bundles  $\mathcal{U}_\eta(\zeta) : \mathcal{V}_U^{\leq n} \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathbb{V}^{\leq n} \otimes \mathcal{O}_U$  and  $\mathcal{U}_\eta(1/\zeta) : \mathcal{V}_V^{\leq n} \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathbb{V}^{\leq n} \otimes \mathcal{O}_V$  related by the transition function

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{U}_\eta(1/\zeta)\mathcal{U}_\eta(\zeta) : \mathbb{V}^{\leq n} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{C}^\times} &\xrightarrow{\cong} \mathbb{V}^{\leq n} \otimes \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{C}^\times} \\ \gamma \in \mathbb{C}^\times &\mapsto e^{\gamma L_1}(-\gamma^{-2})^{L_0} \in \text{End}(\mathbb{V}^{\leq n}) \end{aligned}$$

## 2.2 Definition of conformal blocks

**Definition 2.2.** Let  $n \in \mathbb{Z}_+$ , and let  $C$  be a compact Riemann surface. By an  $N$ -pointed compact Riemann surface, we mean the data

$$\mathfrak{X} = (C; x_\bullet) = (C; x_1, \dots, x_N)$$

where  $x_1, \dots, x_N$  (often abbreviated to  $x_\bullet$ ) are distinct points of  $C$  (called **punctures** or **marked points**).

If, in addition to the above data  $(C; x_\bullet)$ , we associate to each marked point  $x_i$  a (holomorphic) univalent function on a neighborhood  $U_i$  of  $x_i$  satisfying  $\eta_i(x_i) = 0$  (we call such  $\eta_i$  a **local coordinate at  $x_i$** ), we call the data

$$\mathfrak{X} = (C; x_\bullet; \eta_\bullet) = (C; x_1, \dots, x_N; \eta_1, \dots, \eta_N)$$

an  $N$ -pointed compact Riemann surface with (local) coordinates.

If  $C = \mathbb{P}^1$  (or more generally, if  $C$  is a disjoint union of  $\mathbb{P}^1$ ), and if the local coordinate  $\eta_i$  extends to a biholomorphism  $\eta_i : \mathbb{P}^1 \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^1$ , we call  $\eta_i$  a **Möbius (local) coordinate** at  $x_i$ . If  $x_i \neq \infty$ , then  $\eta_i(z) = \frac{\lambda(z-x_i)}{1-\tau(z-x_i)}$  for some  $\gamma, \tau \in \mathbb{C}$  and  $\gamma \neq 0$ .  $\square$

**Assumption 2.3.** Unless otherwise stated, we assume that in an  $N$ -pointed compact Riemann surface  $(C; x_\bullet)$ , each connected component of  $C$  contains at least one marked point.

**Definition 2.4.** If  $\mathfrak{X} = (C; x_\bullet; \eta_\bullet)$  and  $\mathfrak{Y} = (C'; y_\bullet; \mu_\bullet)$  are  $N$ -pointed compact Riemann surfaces with local coordinates, we say that  $\mathfrak{X}$  is **equivalent** to  $\mathfrak{Y}$  if there is a biholomorphism  $\varphi : C \rightarrow C'$  such that for each  $1 \leq i \leq N$  we have that  $\varphi(x_i) = y_i$  and that  $\eta_i = \mu_i \circ \varphi$  on a neighborhood of  $x_i$ .

Let  $\mathfrak{X} = (C; x_\bullet; \eta_\bullet)$  be an  $N$ -pointed compact Riemann surface with local coordinates. We associate to each marked point  $x_i$  a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}_i$ . We write

$$\mathbb{W}_\bullet = \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{W}_N$$

for simplicity. Also,  $\mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet$  or  $w \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet$  means an element of  $\mathbb{W}_\bullet$ , but

$$w_\bullet \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet \text{ means an element of } \mathbb{W}_\bullet \text{ of the form } w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes w_N.$$

A conformal block is then an element of the dual space  $\mathbb{W}_\bullet^* = (\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{W}_N)^*$  invariant under the action of

$$H^0(C, \mathcal{V}_C \otimes \omega_C(\star x_\bullet)) := \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} H^0(C, \mathcal{V}_C^{\leq n} \otimes \omega_C(\star x_\bullet))$$

(recall (0.6) for the meaning of the notation). The action is described as follows.

Choose any  $\sigma \in H^0(C, \mathcal{V}_C^{\leq n} \otimes \omega_C(\star x_\bullet))$ . Choose a neighborhood  $U_i$  of  $x_i$  on which  $\eta_i$  is defined (and univalent), and assume that  $x_j \notin U_i$  if  $i \neq j$ . We first define the action of  $\sigma$  on  $\mathbb{W}_i$ . For that purpose, it suffices to assume that  $\sigma \in H^0(U, \mathcal{V}_U^{\leq n} \otimes \omega_U(\star x_i))$ .



**Definition 2.5.** Under the trivialization map  $\mathcal{U}_\varrho(\eta_i)$ ,  $\sigma$  becomes  $\mathcal{U}_\varrho(\eta_i)\sigma \in H^0(U, \mathbb{V}^{\leq n} \otimes \mathcal{O}_U(\star x_i))$ , which can therefore be written as a finite sum

$$\mathcal{U}_\varrho(\eta_i)\sigma = \sum_k v_k f_k d\eta_i$$

for some  $v_k \in \mathbb{V}^{\leq n}$  and  $f_k \in H^0(U, \mathcal{O}_U(\star x_i))$ . (Namely,  $f_k$  is a meromorphic function on  $U$  with possible poles at  $x_i$ .) Take the Laurent series expansion

$$f_k = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} f_{k,n} \cdot \eta_i^n \quad (f_{k,n} \in \mathbb{C})$$

Note that  $f_{k,n} = 0$  for sufficiently negative  $n$ . Then the linear action of  $\sigma$  on any  $w_i \in \mathbb{W}_i$  is defined to be

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma \cdot w_i &= \text{Res}_{\eta_i=0} Y(\mathcal{U}_\varrho(\eta_i)\sigma, \eta_i)w_i \\ &= \sum_k \text{Res}_{\eta_i=0} f_k \cdot Y(v_k, \eta_i)w_i d\eta_i \\ &= \sum_k \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \text{Res}_{z=0} f_{k,n} z^n Y(v_k, z)w_i dz \\ &= \sum_k \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} f_{k,n} Y(v_k)_n w_i \end{aligned} \tag{2.6}$$

**Definition 2.6.** The linear action of  $H^0(C, \mathcal{V}_C \otimes \omega_C(\star x_\bullet))$  on  $\mathbb{W}_\bullet = \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{W}_N$  is defined as follows. For each  $\sigma \in H^0(C, \mathcal{V}_C \otimes \omega_C(\star x_\bullet))$ , choose  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $\sigma \in H^0(C, \mathcal{V}_C^{\leq n} \otimes \omega_C(\star x_\bullet))$ . By linearity, it suffices to define the action of  $\sigma$  on any  $w_\bullet = w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes w_N$ . This is defined by be

$$\sigma \cdot w_\bullet = \sum_{i=1}^N w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes w_{i-1} \otimes (\sigma \cdot w_i) \otimes w_{i+1} \otimes \cdots \otimes w_N \tag{2.7}$$

where  $\sigma \cdot w_i$  is defined by (2.6).

**Definition 2.7.** Let  $\mathfrak{X} = (C; x_\bullet; \eta_\bullet)$  be an  $N$ -pointed compact Riemann surfaces with local coordinates, and associate a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}_i$  to each marked point  $x_\bullet$ . A linear functional  $\phi : \mathbb{W}_\bullet \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  vanishing on

$$H^0(C, \mathcal{V}_C \otimes \omega_C(\star x_\bullet))\mathbb{W}_\bullet = \text{Span}_{\mathbb{C}}\{\sigma \cdot w_\bullet : \sigma \in H^0(C, \mathcal{V}_C^{\leq n} \otimes \omega_C(\star x_\bullet)), n \in \mathbb{N}, w_\bullet \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet\}$$

is called a **conformal block** associated to  $\mathfrak{X}, \mathbb{W}_\bullet$ . The space of all such elements, namely

$$\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet) := (\mathbb{W}_\bullet / H^0(C, \mathcal{V}_C \otimes \omega_C(\star x_\bullet))\mathbb{W}_\bullet)^*$$

is called the **space of conformal blocks** associated to  $\mathfrak{X}$  and  $\mathbb{W}_\bullet$ .

### 2.3 Examples in genus 0

**Example 2.8.** Let  $\zeta$  be the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{P}^1$ . Let  $N \in \mathbb{N}$ , and consider the following  $(N + 1)$ -pointed compact Riemann surface with Möbius coordinates

$$\mathfrak{X} = (\mathbb{P}^1; z_1, \dots, z_N, \infty; \zeta - z_1, \dots, \zeta - z_N, 1/\zeta). \quad (2.8)$$

Using the trivialization  $\mathcal{U}_\varrho(\zeta) : \mathcal{V}_\mathbb{C}^{\leq n} \rightarrow \mathbb{V}^{\leq n} \otimes \mathcal{O}_\mathbb{C}$  and regarding  $v \in \mathbb{V}^{\leq n}$  as a constant section of  $\mathbb{V}^{\leq n} \otimes \mathcal{O}_\mathbb{C}$ , it is not hard to see that

$$\begin{aligned} & H^0(\mathbb{P}^1, \mathcal{V}_{\mathbb{P}^1} \otimes \omega_C(\star z_\bullet + \star \infty)) \\ &= \text{Span}_\mathbb{C} \{ f \cdot \mathcal{U}_\varrho(\zeta)^{-1} v d\zeta : f \in H^0(\mathbb{P}^1, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^1}(\star z_\bullet + \star \infty)), v \in \mathbb{V} \}. \end{aligned}$$

It is also clear that

$$H^0(\mathbb{P}^1, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbb{P}^1}(\star z_\bullet + \star \infty)) = \mathbb{C}[\zeta, (\zeta - z_1)^{-1}, \dots, (\zeta - z_N)^{-1}] \quad (2.9)$$

Take power series expansions

$$f = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} f_{i,n} (z - z_i)^n \quad \text{when } |z - z_i| \text{ is small} \quad (2.10a)$$

$$f = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} f_{\infty,n} z^n \quad \text{when } |z| \text{ is large} \quad (2.10b)$$

Associate  $\mathbb{W}_i$  to  $x_i$  and  $\mathbb{W}_\infty$  to  $\infty$ . Then the actions of

$$\sigma = f \cdot \mathcal{U}_\varrho(\zeta)^{-1} v d\zeta$$

on  $w_i \in \mathbb{W}_i$  and on  $w_\infty \in \mathbb{W}_\infty$  are

$$\sigma \cdot w_i = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} f_{i,n} Y(v)_n w_i \quad (2.11a)$$

$$\sigma \cdot w_\infty = - \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} f_{\infty,n} Y'(v)_n w_\infty \quad (2.11b)$$

(We will explain (2.11b) below.) Then  $\sigma(w_1 \otimes \dots \otimes w_N \otimes w_\infty)$  is defined as in (2.7).  $\mathcal{T}_\mathfrak{X}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{W}_\infty)$  is the set of linear functionals on  $\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{W}_\infty$  vanishing on all such  $\sigma \cdot (w_\bullet \otimes w_N)$ .  $\square$

*Proof of (2.11b).* Since we are computing the action on  $\mathbb{W}_\infty$ , we need to use the local coordinate  $1/\zeta$  at  $\infty$ . Then, by Exp. 2.1,

$$\mathcal{U}_\varrho(1/\zeta)_z \sigma(z) = \mathcal{U}_\varrho(1/\zeta)_z f(z) \mathcal{U}_\varrho(\zeta)_z^{-1} v d\zeta = f(z) \mathcal{U}(\varrho(1/\zeta|\zeta)_z) v dz = f(z) \mathcal{U}(\vartheta_z) v dz,$$

which equals  $f(z) e^{zL_1} (-z^{-2})^{L_0} v dz$ . Recall the definition of  $Y'$  in (1.2). We compute

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma \cdot w_\infty &= \text{Res}_{1/\zeta=0} Y(\mathcal{U}_\varrho(1/\zeta) \sigma, 1/\zeta) w_\infty \\ &= \text{Res}_{1/z=0} Y(f(z) \mathcal{U}(\vartheta_z) v, 1/z) w_\infty dz = \text{Res}_{1/z=0} f(z) Y'(v, z) w_\infty dz \end{aligned}$$

Note that  $\text{Res}_{z=0} g(z) dz = g_{-1} = -\text{Res}_{1/z=0} g(z) dz$  for all  $g = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} g_n z^n \in \mathbb{C}[[z^{\pm 1}]]$ . So

$$\sigma \cdot w_\infty = - \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} f_{\infty,n} z^n Y'(v, z) w_\infty dz = - \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} f_{\infty,n} Y'(v)_n w_\infty.$$

$\square$

**Remark 2.9.** In Exp. 2.8, we often regard a conformal block  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet} \otimes \mathbb{W}_{\infty})$  as a linear map  $\mathcal{Y}_{\phi} : \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{W}_N \rightarrow \mathbb{W}_{\infty}^*$ . (Note that  $\mathbb{W}_{\infty}^*$  equals the algebraic completion of  $\mathbb{W}'$ .) Then the condition that  $\phi$  vanishes on all  $\sigma \cdot (w_{\bullet} \otimes w_N)$  is equivalent to saying that for each  $v \in \mathbb{V}$  and  $f \in \mathbb{C}[\zeta, (\zeta - z_1)^{-1}, \dots, (\zeta - z_N)^{-1}]$ , in terms of the expansions (2.10), the following **Jacobi identity** holds in  $\mathbb{W}_{\infty}^* = \overline{\mathbb{W}'_{\infty}}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} f_{\infty, n} Y_{\mathbb{W}'_{\infty}}(v)_n \mathcal{Y}_{\phi}(w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes w_N) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^N \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} f_{i, n} \mathcal{Y}_{\phi}(w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes Y_{\mathbb{W}_i}(v)_n w_i \otimes \cdots \otimes w_N). \end{aligned} \quad (2.12)$$

In the special case that  $N = 2$ ,  $z_1 = 0$ ,  $z_2 = z$ , we write

$$\phi(w_1 \otimes w_2 \otimes w_{\infty}) = \langle \mathcal{Y}_{\phi}(w_2, z) w_1, w_{\infty} \rangle$$

and call  $\mathcal{Y}_{\phi}(\cdot, z) : \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{W}_{\infty}^*$  a **type  $(\mathbb{W}'_{\infty} / \mathbb{W}_2 \mathbb{W}_1)$  intertwining operator at  $z$** .

**Example 2.10.** Let  $\mathfrak{X} = (\mathbb{P}^1; 0, \infty; \zeta, 1/\zeta)$  where  $\zeta$  is the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ . Let  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  be  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules. If  $A \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2)$ , then the linear functional

$$\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2 \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \quad w_1 \otimes w'_2 \mapsto \langle Aw_1, w'_2 \rangle$$

is a conformal block associated to  $\mathfrak{X}$  by Jacobi identity (2.12). Conversely, if  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2)$ , we let  $A : \mathbb{W}_1 \rightarrow \overline{\mathbb{W}_2}$  be the linear map such that  $\phi(w_1 \otimes w'_2) = \langle Aw_1, w'_2 \rangle$  holds for all  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, w'_2 \in \mathbb{W}'_2$ . Then Jacobi identity (2.12) implies that  $A$  intertwines the action of any vertex operator  $Y(v)_n$  where  $v \in \mathbb{V}, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ . In particular,  $[L_0, A] = 0$ . This implies that  $A$  sends  $\mathbb{W}_1$  into  $\mathbb{W}_2$ , and that  $A \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2)$ . We conclude that there is a canonical isomorphism

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2) \simeq \mathcal{T}_{(\mathbb{P}^1; 0, \infty; \zeta, 1/\zeta)}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2)$$

**Example 2.11.** Let  $z \in \mathbb{C}^{\times}$  and  $\mathfrak{P} = (\mathbb{P}^1; 0, z, \infty; \zeta, \zeta - z, 1/\zeta)$ . Let  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  be  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules. If  $A \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2)$ , then the linear functional

$$\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{V} \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2 \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \quad w_1 \otimes v \otimes w'_2 \mapsto \langle AY(v, z) w_1, w'_2 \rangle \quad (2.13)$$

is a conformal block associated to  $\mathfrak{P}$  by Jacobi identity (2.12). Conversely, if  $\phi : \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{V} \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2 \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is a conformal block associated to  $\mathfrak{P}$ . Then by Jacobi identity (2.12) or by Prop. 2.19,  $\phi$  is uniquely determined by its restriction to  $\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2$  where  $\mathbf{1} \in \mathbb{V}$  is the vacuum vector. Using (2.12), one checks easily that  $w_1 \otimes w'_2 \in \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2 \mapsto \phi(w_1 \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes w'_2)$  is a conformal block associated to  $(\mathbb{P}^1; 0, \infty; \zeta, 1/\zeta)$ , which is of the form  $w_1 \otimes w'_2 \mapsto \langle Aw_1, w'_2 \rangle$  due to Exp. 2.10. So by the uniqueness already mentioned,  $\phi$  must be of the form (2.13). We conclude that there is a canonical isomorphism

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2) \simeq \mathcal{T}_{(\mathbb{P}^1; 0, z, \infty; \zeta, \zeta - z, 1/\zeta)}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{V} \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2)$$

**Example 2.12** ([Li94, Prop. 3.3]). Let  $\mathbb{W}$  be a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. Recall that  $\mathbb{W}_{(s)}$  is the  $L_0$ -weight  $s$  subspace. Then Exp. 2.8 shows  $H^0(\mathbb{P}, \mathcal{V}_{\mathbb{P}^1} \otimes \omega_C(\star\infty)) = \{\mathcal{U}_\varrho(\zeta)^{-1}v\zeta^n d\zeta : n \in \mathbb{N}, v \in \mathbb{V}\}$  and hence

$$\mathcal{T}_{(\mathbb{P}^1; \infty; 1/\zeta)}(\mathbb{W}) = \frac{\mathbb{W}}{Y'(\mathbb{V})_{\geq 0} \mathbb{W}} := \frac{\mathbb{W}}{\{Y'_{\mathbb{W}}(v)_n w : n \in \mathbb{N}, v \in \mathbb{V}, w \in \mathbb{W}\}} \quad (2.14)$$

by (2.10b). We claim that  $\mathbb{W}_{(0)} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{W}$  descends to a linear isomorphism

$$\frac{\mathbb{W}_{(0)}}{L_1 \cdot \mathbb{W}_{(1)}} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \frac{\mathbb{W}}{Y'(\mathbb{V})_{\geq 0} \mathbb{W}} \quad (2.15)$$

Therefore the canonical surjective map  $\mathbb{W}^* \rightarrow \mathbb{W}_{(0)}^*$  restricts to a linear isomorphism

$$\mathcal{T}_{(\mathbb{P}^1; \infty; 1/\zeta)}^*(\mathbb{W}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \left( \frac{\mathbb{W}_{(0)}}{L_1 \cdot \mathbb{W}_{(1)}} \right)^* \quad (2.16)$$

*Proof of (2.15).* Let  $\mathbb{X} = Y'(\mathbb{V})_{\geq 0} \mathbb{W}$ . Since  $Y'(\mathbf{c})_1$  equals  $L_0$  acting on  $\mathbb{W}$ ,  $\mathbb{X}$  contains  $L_0 \mathbb{W} = \bigoplus_{s \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\}} \mathbb{W}_{(s)}$ . Since  $Y(\mathbf{c})_0 = L_{-1}$  and hence  $Y'(\mathbf{c})_0 = L_1$ , we have  $L_1 \cdot \mathbb{W}_{(1)} \subset \mathbb{X}$ . So (2.15) is well-defined and surjective. To show that (2.15) is injective, it suffices to choose any  $s \in \mathbb{C}, n \in \mathbb{N}$  and homogeneous  $v \in \mathbb{V}, w \in \mathbb{W}$  satisfying  $Y'(v)_n w \in \mathbb{W}_{(0)}$  and show that  $Y'(v)_n w \in L_1 \cdot \mathbb{W}$ . By translation property,  $[L_{-1}, Y'_{\mathbb{W}}(v)_n] = -n Y'_{\mathbb{W}}(v)_{n-1}$ , whose transpose implies  $Y'_{\mathbb{W}}(v)_n = -(n+1)^{-1} [L_1, Y'_{\mathbb{W}}(v)_{n+1}]$ . So

$$Y'(v)_n w + L_1 \mathbb{W} \subset \mathbb{C} \cdot Y'(v)_{n+1} L_1 w + L_1 \mathbb{W} \subset \cdots \subset \mathbb{C} \cdot Y'(v)_{n+k} L_1^k w + L_1 \mathbb{W}$$

where the RHS is 0 if  $k$  is larger than the  $L_0$ -weight of  $w$ .  $\square$

**Example 2.13** ([Li94, Prop. 3.4]). Let  $\mathbb{W}$  be a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. If  $\phi \in (\mathbb{W}_{(0)}/L_1 \mathbb{W}_{(1)})^*$ , then by Exp. 2.12, for each  $v \in \mathbb{V}, w \in \mathbb{W}$ ,  $\phi(Y'(v, z)w)$  belongs to  $\mathbb{C}[[z]]$  since  $\phi$  vanishes on  $Y'(\mathbb{V})_{\geq 0} \mathbb{W}$ . Using Jacobi identity to expand  $Y(Y(u)_n v)_{-1}$  and taking transpose, one sees that

$$\Psi(\phi) : \mathbb{V} \otimes \mathbb{W} \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \quad v \otimes w \mapsto \lim_{z \rightarrow 0} \phi(Y'(v, z)w) = \phi(Y'(v)_{-1}w) \quad (2.17)$$

belongs to  $\mathcal{T}_{(\mathbb{P}^1; 0, \infty; \zeta, 1/\zeta)}^*(\mathbb{V} \otimes \mathbb{W})$ , i.e. it gives a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module morphism  $\mathbb{V} \rightarrow \mathbb{W}'$ . This gives a linear map

$$\Psi : (\mathbb{W}_{(0)}/L_1 \mathbb{W}_{(1)})^* \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathcal{T}_{(\mathbb{P}^1; 0, \infty; \zeta, 1/\zeta)}^*(\mathbb{V} \otimes \mathbb{W}) \simeq \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{V}, \mathbb{W}') \quad (2.18)$$

which is bijective. It is injective because  $\Psi(\phi)(\mathbf{1} \otimes w) = \phi(w)$ . It is surjective because each  $A \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{V}, \mathbb{W}')$  equals  $\Psi(\phi)$  where  $\phi : \mathbb{W} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}, w \mapsto \langle A\mathbf{1}, w \rangle$ . Its inverse is

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{V}, \mathbb{W}') \xrightarrow{\simeq} (\mathbb{W}_{(0)}/L_1 \mathbb{W}_{(1)})^* \quad A \mapsto A\mathbf{1} \quad (2.19)$$

**Remark 2.14.** The above examples suggest that adding an extract distinct marked point to a pointed surface  $\mathfrak{X}$  and associating the vacuum module  $\mathbb{V}$  to that point does not essentially change the space of conformal blocks. (For instance, if  $z \in \mathbb{C}^\times$ , we have a canonical isomorphism  $(\mathbb{W}_{(0)}/L_1 \mathbb{W}_{(1)})^* \simeq \mathcal{T}_{(\mathbb{P}^1; 0, z, \infty; \zeta, \zeta-z, 1/\zeta)}^*(\mathbb{V} \otimes \mathbb{V} \otimes \mathbb{W})$ .) This property is true in general and called **propagation of conformal blocks**. See [Zhu94, Thm. 6.1] or [FB04, Thm. 10.3.1] or [Gui21, Cor. 7.5] for rigorous statements and proofs. See also [Gui23b] Sec. 16 (especially Thm. 16.7) for intuitive explanations.

We give an interesting application of Exp. 2.13.

**Definition 2.15.** A  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}$  is called **Möbius unitarizable** if  $\mathbb{W}$  has an inner product  $\langle \cdot | \cdot \rangle$  satisfying that  $\langle L_n w_1 | w_2 \rangle = \langle w_1 | L_{-n} w_2 \rangle$  for all  $w_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{W}$  and  $n \in \{-1, 0, 1\}$ . Choosing  $n = 0$ , we see that the  $L_0$ -grading of  $\mathbb{W}$  is orthogonal under the inner product.

**Remark 2.16.** Suppose that a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}$  is Möbius unitary under an inner product  $\langle \cdot | \cdot \rangle$ . Let  $\mathbb{C} : \mathbb{W} \rightarrow \mathbb{W}'$  be the antilinear isomorphism such that  $\langle w_1, \mathbb{C} w_2 \rangle = \langle w_1 | w_2 \rangle$  if  $w_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{W}$ . Define the inner product on  $\mathbb{W}'$  such that  $\mathbb{C}$  is antiunitary. Then  $\mathbb{W}'$  is Möbius unitary under this inner product: for each  $n = 0, \pm 1$ ,  $\langle w_1, L_n \mathbb{C} w_2 \rangle = \langle L_{-n} w_1, \mathbb{C} w_2 \rangle = \langle L_{-n} w_1 | w_2 \rangle = \langle w_1 | L_n w_2 \rangle = \langle w_1, \mathbb{C} L_n w_2 \rangle$  and so  $L_n \mathbb{C} w = \mathbb{C} L_n w$  for all  $w \in \mathbb{W}$ . Thus  $\langle L_n \mathbb{C} w_1 | \mathbb{C} w_2 \rangle = \langle \mathbb{C} L_n w_1 | \mathbb{C} w_2 \rangle = \langle w_2 | L_n w_1 \rangle = \langle L_{-n} w_2 | w_1 \rangle = \langle \mathbb{C} w_1 | \mathbb{C} L_{-n} w_2 \rangle = \langle \mathbb{C} w_1 | L_{-n} \mathbb{C} w_2 \rangle$ .

**Theorem 2.17.** Let  $\mathbb{W}$  be a Möbius unitarizable  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. Let  $\text{Sp}(L_0)$  be the set of eigenvalues of  $L_0$  on  $\mathbb{W}$ . Then  $\text{Sp}(L_0) \subset [0, +\infty)$  and  $L_1 \mathbb{W}_{(1)} = 0$ . Moreover, we have a linear isomorphism

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{V}, \mathbb{W}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbb{W}_{(0)} \quad A \mapsto A1$$

*Proof.* That  $\text{Sp}(L_0) \subset [0, +\infty)$  is well-known: Suppose  $w \in \mathbb{W}_{(s)}$  and  $w \neq 0$ . Since, by assumption, the eigenvalues of  $L_0$  have lower-bounded real parts, we can find  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  such that  $\tilde{w} := L_1^k w \neq 0$  but  $L_1^{k+1} w = 0$ . Since  $\langle L_{-1} \tilde{w} | L_{-1} \tilde{w} \rangle = \langle L_1 L_{-1} \tilde{w} | \tilde{w} \rangle = \langle [L_1, L_{-1}] \tilde{w} | \tilde{w} \rangle = \langle 2L_0 \tilde{w} | \tilde{w} \rangle = 2s \langle \tilde{w} | \tilde{w} \rangle$ , we have  $s \geq 0$ .

Choose  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_{(1)}$  and  $w_0 \in \mathbb{W}_{(0)}$ . We need to show  $\langle L_1 w_1 | w_0 \rangle$  is 0. It suffices to show  $L_{-1} w_0 = 0$ . Since  $\mathbb{W}_{-s} = 0$ , similar to the previous argument we have  $\langle L_{-1} w_0 | L_{-1} w_0 \rangle = \langle 2L_0 w_0 | w_0 \rangle = 0$ . This finishes the proof that  $L_1 \mathbb{W}_{(1)} = 0$ .

By Exp. 2.13, we have a linear isomorphism  $\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{V}, \mathbb{W}') \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbb{W}_{(0)}^*$ ,  $A \mapsto A1$ . The same is true about  $\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{V}, \mathbb{W})$ .  $\square$

See Thm. 4.5 and Prop. 11.2 for applications of Thm. 2.17.

## 2.4 Basic properties of conformal blocks

The following fact is fundamental. Recall Rem. 1.4.

**Theorem 2.18.** Assume that  $\mathbb{V}$  is  $C_2$ -cofinite. Then the space of conformal block  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbb{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet})$  is finite-dimensional.

*Proof.* This is due to [AN03] under the assumption that the  $C_2$ -cofinite VOA  $\mathbb{V}$  is also quasi-primary generated (which automatically holds when  $\mathbb{V}$  is unitary). The general case was proved in [DGT23, Prop. 5.1.1]. See also [Gui23a, Thm. 7.4].  $\square$

The following uniqueness result will be helpful.

**Proposition 2.19.** Assume that  $C$  is connected and  $N \geq 2$ . Assume that  $\mathbb{W}_N$  is generated by a subset  $\mathbb{E}$ . Assume that  $\phi, \psi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathbb{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet})$  satisfy that

$$\phi(w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes w_{N-1} \otimes w_N) = \psi(w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes w_{N-1} \otimes w_N)$$

for all  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, \dots, w_{N-1} \in \mathbb{W}_{N-1}$  and  $w_N \in \mathbb{E}$ . Then  $\phi = \psi$ .

*Proof.* This was proved in [Gui21, Prop. 7.2] in a more general setting. In this article, we only need this result in the special case that  $C = \mathbb{P}^1$  (and  $N = 3$ ). In this case, we can assume that the marked point  $x_N$  for  $\mathbb{W}_N$  is  $\infty$ , and change the local coordinates (cf. Prop. 2.20) to (2.8). Then this result is an easy consequence of the Jacobi identity (2.12) (in which we choose  $f(z) = z^n$ ).  $\square$

We present two methods for constructing new conformal blocks from old ones. The first one is by changing local coordinates. The second one will be discussed the next section.

**Proposition 2.20.** *Let  $\mathfrak{X} = (C; x_\bullet; \eta_\bullet)$  and  $\mathfrak{Y} = (C; x_\bullet; \mu_\bullet)$  be two  $N$ -pointed compact Riemann surfaces with coordinates, where the underlying Riemann surface  $C$  and the marked points  $x_\bullet$  are the same. Associate a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}_i$  to each marked point  $x_i$ . Then we have an isomorphism of vector spaces*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet) &\rightarrow \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{Y}}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet) \\ \phi &\mapsto \phi \circ (\mathcal{U}(\eta_1 \circ \mu_1^{-1}) \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathcal{U}(\eta_N \circ \mu_N^{-1})) \end{aligned} \quad (2.20)$$

The same conclusion holds if we replace each  $\mathcal{U}(\eta_i \circ \mu_i^{-1})$  with  $\mathcal{U}_0(\eta_i \circ \mu_i^{-1})$ .

Note that each  $\eta_i \circ \mu_i$  is an element of  $\mathbb{G}$ , and  $\mathcal{U}(\eta_i \circ \mu_i^{-1})$  is an invertible linear map on  $\mathbb{W}_i$ .

*Proof.* This theorem is due to [FB04, Thm. 6.5.4]. (See also [Gui23a, Thm. 3.2].) It is proved using Huang's change of coordinate Thm. 1.13.  $\square$

As a consequence, the dimension of  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet)$  is independent of the local coordinates.

**Example 2.21.** Let  $\tau \in \mathbb{C}$ , and choose a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}$ . Assume  $\mathfrak{X} = (\mathbb{P}^1; \tau, \infty; \zeta - \tau, 1/\zeta)$  where  $\zeta$  is the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ . Associate  $\mathbb{W}, \mathbb{W}'$  to the marked points  $\tau, \infty$  respectively. Then  $\mathfrak{X}$  is equivalent to  $\mathfrak{Y} = (\mathbb{P}^1; 0, \infty; \zeta, 1/(\zeta + \tau))$ . Let  $\mathfrak{P} = (\mathbb{P}^1; 0, \infty; \zeta, 1/\zeta)$ . Then

$$\mathbb{W} \otimes \mathbb{W}' \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \quad w \otimes w' \mapsto \langle w, w' \rangle$$

is a conformal block associated to  $\mathfrak{P}$  and  $\mathbb{W}, \mathbb{W}'$ . (This follows e.g. from Rem. 2.9.) Thus, by Prop. 2.20 and Exp. 1.11,

$$\mathbb{W} \otimes \mathbb{W}' \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \quad w \otimes w' \mapsto \langle w, e^{\tau L_1} w' \rangle = \langle e^{\tau L_{-1}} w, w' \rangle$$

is a conformal block associated to  $\mathfrak{X}$  and  $\mathbb{W}, \mathbb{W}'$ .

**Example 2.22.** Let  $\zeta$  be the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ . For each  $z \in \mathbb{C}^\times$ , consider  $\mathfrak{P}_z = \{\mathbb{P}^1; 0, z, \infty; \zeta, \zeta - z, 1/\zeta\}$ . Associate  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules  $\mathbb{W}_2, \mathbb{W}_1$  and  $\mathbb{W}'_3$  (contragredient to  $\mathbb{W}_3$ ) to the marked points  $0, z, \infty$  respectively. According to Rem. 2.9, an element of  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{P}_1}^*(\mathbb{W}_2, \mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}'_3)$  is equivalently a type  $\binom{\mathbb{W}_3}{\mathbb{W}_1 \mathbb{W}_2}$  intertwining operator of  $\mathbb{V}$  at 1. And any such element  $\mathcal{Y}(\cdot, 1)$  of  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{P}_1}^*(\mathbb{W}_2, \mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}'_3)$ , which is a linear functional

$$w_2 \otimes w_1 \otimes w'_3 \in \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_3 \quad \mapsto \quad \langle \mathcal{Y}(w_1, 1) w_2, w'_3 \rangle,$$

can be viewed as a linear map  $\mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}_1 \rightarrow \overline{\mathbb{W}}_3$ .

We let the argument of the 1 in  $\mathcal{Y}(\cdot, 1)$  be 0. Choose  $\arg z$  for  $z$ . Since the map  $\gamma \in \mathbb{P}^1 \mapsto z^{-1}\gamma$  gives an equivalence

$$\mathfrak{P}_z \simeq (\mathbb{P}^1; 0, 1, \infty; z\zeta, z(\zeta - 1), 1/(z\zeta))$$

according to Prop. 2.20,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{Y}(\cdot, z) : \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 &\rightarrow \overline{\mathbb{W}}_3 \\ \mathcal{Y}(w_1, z)w_2 &= z^{L_0}\mathcal{Y}(z^{-L_0}w_1, 1)z^{-L_0}w_2 \end{aligned}$$

is a type  $\left(\frac{\mathbb{W}_3}{\mathbb{W}_1\mathbb{W}_2}\right)$  intertwining operator at  $z$ . We view  $\mathcal{Y}(\cdot, z)$  as a  $\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2, \overline{\mathbb{W}}_3)$ -valued multivalued holomorphic function of  $z \in \mathbb{C}^\times$ , single valued on  $\log z$ . Such a function  $\mathcal{Y}$  is called a **type  $\left(\frac{\mathbb{W}_3}{\mathbb{W}_1\mathbb{W}_2}\right)$  intertwining operator** of  $\mathbb{V}$ . The vector space of all such functions is denoted by

$$\mathcal{I}\left(\frac{\mathbb{W}_3}{\mathbb{W}_1\mathbb{W}_2}\right)$$

and clearly has the same dimension as  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{P}_1}^*(\mathbb{W}_2, \mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_3)$ . This dimension is known as the **fusion rule** among  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2, \mathbb{W}_3$ .  $\square$

### 3 Sewing conformal blocks

The second way of constructing new conformal blocks is by sewing. We first review the geometric construction of sewing Riemann surfaces. There are two types of sewing: sewing two connected surfaces (i.e. taking the connected sum), and sewing a connected surface with itself (e.g. sewing a cylinder to get a torus). Both types can be described by the following procedure. We consider simultaneous sewing along several pairs of points. Let

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{X} &= (C; x_\bullet; x'_\star; x''_\star; \eta_\bullet; \xi_\star; \varpi_\star) \\ &= (C; x_1, \dots, x_N; x'_1, \dots, x'_M; x''_1, \dots, x''_M; \eta_1, \dots, \eta_N; \xi_1, \dots, \xi_M; \varpi_1, \dots, \varpi_M) \end{aligned} \quad (3.1)$$

be an  $(N + 2M)$ -pointed compact Riemann surface with marked points  $x_\bullet, x'_\star, x''_\star$ , and  $\eta_i$  (resp.  $\xi_j, \varpi_j$ ) is a local coordinate of  $C$  at  $x_i$  (resp.  $x'_j, x''_j$ ). Recall that  $C$  is not assumed to be connected.

**Assumption 3.1.** In the sewing procedure, we assume that each connected component of  $C$  contains at least one of  $x_1, \dots, x_N$  (but not only one of  $x_\bullet, x'_\star, x''_\star$ , as required in Assumption 2.3). Moreover, we choose neighborhoods  $W'_j$  of each  $x'_j$  and  $W''_j$  of  $x''_j$  such that  $\xi_j \in \mathcal{O}(W'_j), \varpi_j \in \mathcal{O}(W''_j)$  are univalent, and that any two members of

$$\{x_1\}, \dots, \{x_N\}, W'_1, \dots, W'_M, W''_1, \dots, W''_M$$

do not intersect. (In particular,  $x'_j$  (resp.  $x''_j$ ) is the only one of the  $N + 2M$  marked points that belongs to  $W'_j$  (resp.  $W''_j$ ).)



Recall the notations in (0.3).

**Definition 3.2.** For each  $1 \leq j \leq M$ , choose  $r_j, \rho_j > 0$  such that

$$\xi_j(W'_j) \supset \mathbb{D}_{r_j}, \quad \varpi_j(W''_j) \supset \mathbb{D}_{\rho_j}. \quad (3.2)$$

Choose any  $q_j \in \mathbb{D}_{r_j \rho_j}^\times$ . Write  $q_\bullet = (q_1, \dots, q_M)$ . Define

$$F_j = \xi_j^{-1}(\overline{\mathbb{D}}_{|q_j|/\rho_j}) \cup \varpi_j^{-1}(\overline{\mathbb{D}}_{|q_j|/r_j})$$

$$\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} C = \mathcal{S}_{q_1, \dots, q_M} = \left( C \setminus \bigcup_{1 \leq j \leq M} F_j \right) / \sim$$

where  $\sim$  is defined by identifying the subsets  $\xi_j^{-1}(\mathbb{A}_{|q_j|/\rho_j, r_j})$  and  $\varpi_j^{-1}(\mathbb{A}_{|q_j|/r_j, \rho_j})$  (for all  $j$ ) via the rule

$$\begin{array}{ccc} y' \in \xi_j^{-1}(\mathbb{A}_{|q_j|/\rho_j, r_j}) & \sim & y'' \in \varpi_j^{-1}(\mathbb{A}_{|q_j|/r_j, \rho_j}) \\ \updownarrow & & \\ \xi_j(y') \cdot \varpi_j(y'') = q_j & & \end{array} \quad (3.3)$$

The equivalence relation  $\sim$  above is holomorphic. Therefore  $\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} C$  is a Riemann surface, which is not hard to see as being compact. We call  $\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} C$  the **sewing of  $C$  with parameters  $q_\bullet$**  (along the pairs of points  $(x'_1, x''_1), \dots, (x'_M, x''_M)$ ). The marked points  $x_\bullet$  and their local coordinates  $\eta_\bullet$  become naturally marked points and local coordinates of  $\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} C$ . We denote

$$\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} \mathfrak{X} = (\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} C; x_\bullet; \eta_\bullet)$$

and call it the **sewing of  $\mathfrak{X}$  with parameters  $q_\bullet$**  (along  $(x'_\bullet, x''_\bullet)$  and with respect to the coordinates  $\xi_\bullet, \varpi_\bullet$ ). Clearly  $\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} \mathfrak{X}$  satisfies Asmp. 2.3.

**Remark 3.3.** In the above definition, assume  $r_j, \rho_j > 1$ , then  $\mathcal{S}_{1, \dots, 1} C$  is obtained by removing the open unit disks centered at each  $x'_j$  and  $x''_j$  (defined by  $\xi_j$  and  $\varpi_j$ ) and gluing the unit circles around  $x'_j$  and  $x''_j$  using the relation  $\xi_j \cdot \varpi_j = 1$ . One easily notices that this gluing construction is flexible: If we multiply  $\xi_j$  by some  $\lambda_j \in \mathbb{C}^\times$  and multiply  $\varpi_j$  by  $\lambda_j^{-1}$ , then this cutting-gluing construction gives the same surface. In general, if we multiply  $\xi_j$  by  $q_j^{-1} \lambda_j$ , multiply  $\varpi_j$  by  $\lambda_j^{-1}$ , and perform this cutting-gluing construction, we obtain  $\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} C$ .

Such a rough description does not tell us how to give  $\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} C$  the correct complex structure near the glued circle. Thus the need for the details in Def. 3.2 is justified. (Gluing circles is not a complex-analytic process, but gluing annuli as in (3.3) is so!)  $\square$

To each marked point  $x_i, x'_j, x''_j$  of  $\mathfrak{X}$  (cf. (3.1)) we associate  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules  $\mathbb{W}_i, \mathbb{M}_j, \mathbb{M}'_j$  respectively, where  $\mathbb{M}'_j$  is the contragredient module of  $\mathbb{M}_j$ .

**Definition 3.4.** Choose  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{M}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{M}'_\bullet)$ , namely, the linear functional

$$\phi : \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \dots \otimes \mathbb{W}_N \otimes \mathbb{M}_1 \otimes \mathbb{M}'_1 \otimes \dots \otimes \mathbb{M}_M \otimes \mathbb{M}'_M \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$$

is a conformal block. (We have changed the order of tensor product in order to write  $\mathbb{M}_i$  and  $\mathbb{M}'_i$  together.) Let

$\mathbf{I}_j(n)$  = the identity operator of  $\mathbb{M}_j(n)$ , considered as an element of  $\mathbb{M}_j(n) \otimes \mathbb{M}_j(n)^*$

Define a linear map

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\mathcal{S}}_{q_\bullet} \phi &: \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{W}_N \rightarrow \mathbb{C}[[q_1, \dots, q_N]] \\ \tilde{\mathcal{S}}_{q_\bullet} \phi(w_\bullet) &= \sum_{n_1, \dots, n_M \in \mathbb{N}} \phi(w_\bullet \otimes \mathbf{I}_1(n_1) \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{I}_M(n_M)) q_1^{n_1} \cdots q_M^{n_M} \end{aligned}$$

called the **(normalized) sewing of  $\phi$** .

**Remark 3.5.** Recall that  $\mathbb{W}_j(n)$  is the weight- $n$  eigenspace of the normalized Hamiltonian  $\tilde{L}_0$ . So, if we let  $\mathbf{I}_j$  be the identity operator of  $\mathbb{M}_j$ , then we can informally write

$$\tilde{\mathcal{S}}_{q_\bullet} \phi(w_\bullet) = \phi(w_\bullet \otimes q_1^{\tilde{L}_0} \mathbf{I}_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes q_M^{\tilde{L}_0} \mathbf{I}_M).$$

This justifies our usage of the symbol  $\tilde{\mathcal{S}}$ . In a similar manner, we can define

$$\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} \phi(w_\bullet) = \phi(w_\bullet \otimes q_1^{L_0} \mathbf{I}_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes q_M^{L_0} \mathbf{I}_M) \quad (3.4)$$

in a rigorous way. But this expression is not in  $\mathbb{C}[[q_1, \dots, q_M]]$ . It is a formal series of  $q_1, \dots, q_M$  whose powers are complex numbers but not necessarily natural numbers. If each  $\mathbb{M}_j$  is  $L_0$ -simple and  $L_0 = \lambda_j + \tilde{L}_0$  on  $\mathbb{M}_j$  (and hence on its contragredient module  $\mathbb{M}'_j$ ), then

$$\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} \phi(w_\bullet) = q_1^{\lambda_1} \cdots q_M^{\lambda_M} \tilde{\mathcal{S}}_{q_\bullet} \phi(w_\bullet).$$

We call  $\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} \phi$  the **(standard) sewing of  $\phi$** . The two types of sewing clearly agree when  $q_j = 1$  and  $\arg q_j = 0$ .

We are still under Asmp. 3.1. Write

$$\mathbb{D}_{r_\bullet, \rho_\bullet} := \mathbb{D}_{r_1 \rho_1} \times \cdots \times \mathbb{D}_{r_M \rho_M} \quad \mathbb{D}_{r_\bullet, \rho_\bullet}^\times := \mathbb{D}_{r_1 \rho_1}^\times \times \cdots \times \mathbb{D}_{r_M \rho_M}^\times$$

**Theorem 3.6.** Choose any  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{M}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{M}'_\bullet)$ .

1. Suppose that for each  $w_\bullet \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet$ ,  $\tilde{\mathcal{S}}_{q_\bullet} \phi(w_\bullet)$  converges absolutely on  $q_\bullet \in \mathbb{D}_{r_\bullet, \rho_\bullet}$ . Then for each  $q_\bullet \in \mathbb{D}_{r_\bullet, \rho_\bullet}^\times$ , the linear functional  $\tilde{\mathcal{S}}_{q_\bullet} \phi : \mathbb{W}_\bullet \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is a conformal block associated to  $\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} \mathfrak{X}$ . Namely,

$$\tilde{\mathcal{S}}_{q_\bullet} \phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} \mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet).$$

2. Assume that  $\mathbb{V}$  is  $C_2$ -cofinite. Then for each  $w_\bullet \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet$ , the series  $\tilde{\mathcal{S}}_{q_\bullet} \phi(w_\bullet)$  converges absolutely on  $\mathbb{D}_{r_\bullet, \rho_\bullet}$ .

By (2.8) (when each  $\mathbb{M}_j$  is  $L_0$ -simple), this theorem clearly holds if the normalized sewing is replaced by the standard sewing  $\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet}$ .

*Proof.* Part 1 was proved in [Gui23a, Thm. 11.3-1]. Part 2 was proved in [Gui23a, Thm. 11.4 or 13.1]. In this article, we are mainly interested in the case that both  $\mathfrak{X}$  and  $\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet}\mathfrak{X}$  are of genus 0, and that all the local coordinates are Möbius. In this case, the theorem is due to [Hua05].  $\square$

**Corollary 3.7.** *Assume that  $\mathbb{V}$  is  $C_2$ -cofinite. Let  $\mathfrak{Y} = (C; x_\bullet; \eta_\bullet)$  be an  $N$ -pointed compact Riemann surface with local coordinates. Associate a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}_i$  to each  $x_i$ . Choose a neighborhood  $U_i$  of  $x_i$  on which  $\eta_i$  is defined and univalent, and choose  $r_i > 0$  such that*

$$\eta_i(U_i) \supset \mathbb{D}_{r_i}$$

*Assume that  $U_1, \dots, U_N$  are mutually disjoint. Then for each  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{Y}}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet)$  and  $w_\bullet \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet$ , the series*

$$\psi_{\tau_\bullet}(w_\bullet) = \phi(e^{\tau_1 L_{-1}} w_1 \otimes \dots \otimes e^{\tau_N L_{-1}} w_N) \quad (3.5)$$

*of  $\tau_\bullet = (\tau_1, \dots, \tau_N)$  converges absolutely on  $\mathbb{D}_{r_\bullet} = \mathbb{D}_{r_1} \times \dots \times \mathbb{D}_{r_N}$ . Moreover, for each  $\tau_\bullet \in \mathbb{D}_{r_\bullet}$ ,  $\psi_{\tau_\bullet}$  is a conformal block associated to  $\mathfrak{Y}_{\tau_\bullet}$  and  $\mathbb{W}_\bullet$  where*

$$\mathfrak{Y}_{\tau_\bullet} = (C; \eta_1^{-1}(\tau_1), \dots, \eta_N^{-1}(\tau_N); \eta_1 - \tau_1, \dots, \eta_N - \tau_N)$$

*Proof.* Choose  $\tau_\bullet \in \mathbb{D}_{r_\bullet}$ . Let  $\zeta$  be the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ . For each  $i$ , let  $\mathfrak{P}_i = (\mathbb{P}^1; \tau_i, \infty; \zeta - \tau_i, 1/\zeta)$ . Associate  $\mathbb{W}_i$  to  $\tau_i$  and  $\mathbb{W}'_i$  to  $\infty$ . Let  $\mathfrak{Z} = \mathfrak{Y} \sqcup \mathfrak{P}_1 \sqcup \dots \sqcup \mathfrak{P}_N$ . Then by Exp. 2.21, the linear functional

$$\omega : \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \dots \otimes \mathbb{W}_N \otimes \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_1 \otimes \dots \otimes \mathbb{W}_N \otimes \mathbb{W}'_N \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$$

defined by

$$\begin{aligned} & \omega(m_1 \otimes \dots \otimes m_N \otimes w_1 \otimes w'_1 \otimes \dots \otimes w_N \otimes w'_N) \\ &= \phi(m_1 \otimes \dots \otimes m_N) \langle w_1, e^{\tau_1 L_1} w'_1 \rangle \dots \langle w_N, e^{\tau_N L_1} w'_N \rangle \end{aligned}$$

is a conformal block associated to  $\mathfrak{Z}$ . Now, we sew  $\mathfrak{Z}$  along the pairs  $(x_1, \infty_1), \dots, (x_N, \infty_N)$  where  $\infty_i$  denotes the  $\infty$  of  $\mathfrak{P}_i$ . By Thm. 3.6,  $\mathcal{S}_{q_1, \dots, q_N} \omega$  converges absolutely when  $q_i \in \mathbb{D}_{r_i/|\tau_i|}^\times$  and converges to a conformal block associated to  $\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} \mathfrak{Z}$ . But  $\mathcal{S}_{1, \dots, 1} \mathfrak{Z}$  equals  $\mathfrak{Y}_{\tau_\bullet}$ , and  $\mathcal{S}_{1, \dots, 1} \omega$  equals  $\psi_{\tau_\bullet}$  (and the absolute convergence of the former is equivalent to that of the latter) if we choose the argument of 1 to be 0 and assume for simplicity that  $w_1, \dots, w_N$  are homogeneous. This finishes the proof.  $\square$

Recall that if  $\mathbb{V}$  is  $C_2$ -cofinite, then  $\mathbb{V}$  has finitely many irreducible modules up to equivalence (cf. [Zhu96, DLM00] or the end of [Gui23a, Sec. 12]), and the spaces of conformal blocks are finite-dimensional (Thm. 2.18).

**Theorem 3.8 (Sewing-factorization theorem).** *Assume that  $\mathbb{V}$  is  $C_2$ -cofinite. Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a (necessarily finite) set of representatives of equivalence classes of irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules. Choose any  $q_\bullet \in \mathbb{D}_{r_\bullet, \rho_\bullet}^\times$ . Then the linear map*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{S}_{q_\bullet} : \bigoplus_{\mathbb{M}_1, \dots, \mathbb{M}_M \in \mathcal{E}} \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{M}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{M}'_\bullet) &\rightarrow \mathcal{T}_{\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} \mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet) \\ \bigoplus_{\mathbb{M}} \phi_{\mathbb{M}} &\mapsto \sum_{\mathbb{M}} \mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} \phi_{\mathbb{M}} \end{aligned} \quad (3.6)$$

(which is well defined by Thm. 3.8) is injective. If  $\mathbb{V}$  is also rational, then  $\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{q_\bullet}$  is bijective. The same conclusions hold if  $\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet}$  is replaced by the normalized sewing  $\tilde{\mathcal{S}}_{q_\bullet}$  of conformal blocks.

*Proof.* By induction on  $M$  (i.e. by sewing the surface along a pair of points  $x'_j, x''_j$  each time) we can assume that  $M = 1$ . Then the theorem is due to [Gui23a, Thm. 2.1]. Note that in [Gui23a] the surjectivity of  $\mathfrak{S}_{q_\bullet}$  (when  $\mathbb{V}$  is also rational) was proved by showing that the domain and the codomain of  $\mathfrak{S}_{q_\bullet}$  have the same dimension. This result is called the **factorization of conformal blocks** and was proved in [DGT23]. Again, in our article, we will use Thm. 3.8 mainly in the special case that the surfaces (before and after sewing) are of genus 0 and that the local coordinates are Möbius. In this case, Thm. 3.8 was essentially established in a series of works [HL95a, HL95b, HL95c, Hua95, Hua05].<sup>2</sup> The genus-0 factorization property was also proved in [NT05].  $\square$

## 4 Unitary VOA modules and conjugate conformal blocks

In this section, we assume that  $\mathbb{V}$  is unitary as defined in [DL14, CKLW18].

### 4.1 Unitary VOAs and unitary modules

**Definition 4.1.** We say that the VOA  $\mathbb{V}$  is **unitary**, if  $\mathbb{V}$  is equipped with an inner product  $\langle \cdot | \cdot \rangle$  (antilinear on the second variable) satisfying  $\langle \mathbf{1} | \mathbf{1} \rangle = 1$ , and if an antiunitary map  $\Theta : \mathbb{V} \rightarrow \mathbb{V}$  (called the **PCT operator**) satisfying the following conditions is chosen:

- (1) For each  $u, v \in \mathbb{V}$ ,

$$\Theta Y(u, z)v = Y(\Theta u, \bar{z})\Theta v.$$

In particular, we have  $\Theta L_n = L_n \Theta$ , and hence  $\Theta \mathbb{V}(n) = \mathbb{V}(n)$  for each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

- (2) For each  $u, v_1, v_2 \in \mathbb{V}$ ,

$$\langle Y(u, z)v_1 | v_2 \rangle = \langle v_1 | Y'(\Theta u, \bar{z})v_2 \rangle$$

In particular, we have  $\langle L_n v_1 | v_2 \rangle = \langle v_1 | L_{-n} v_2 \rangle$ . By letting  $v_2 = \mathbf{1}$ , we see that  $\Theta$  is uniquely determined by the inner product.

It follows automatically that  $\Theta^2 = 1$ , and that  $\Theta$  preserves the conformal vector:

$$\Theta \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{c}.$$

See [DL14, CKLW18] for details. Moreover, a unitary VOA is self-dual: the isomorphism  $\mathbb{V} \rightarrow \mathbb{V}'$  is given by the non-degenerate pairing  $\mathbb{V} \otimes \mathbb{V} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}, u \otimes v \mapsto \langle u | \Theta v \rangle$ .

The definition of unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules is straightforward:

---

<sup>2</sup>In these works, the theorem was presented in the form of “braiding/fusion relations of intertwining operators”, e.g. (8.8). These relations are slightly weaker than the genus-0 Möbius version of Thm. 3.8. But the methods of proving braiding/fusion relations actually imply Thm. 3.8. In this article, we will mainly use the fusion relations of intertwining operators instead of using Thm. 3.8 directly. The main reason is that we shall generalize the results of this paper to twisted modules of  $\mathbb{V}$ . For twisted modules and their conformal blocks, the factorization theorem has not yet been proved in general.

**Definition 4.2.** A  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}$  is called **unitary** if it is equipped with an inner product  $\langle \cdot | \cdot \rangle$  (antilinear on the second variable) such that for each  $u \in \mathbb{V}$ ,  $w_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{W}$ ,

$$\langle Y(u, z)w_1 | w_2 \rangle = \langle w_1 | Y'(\Theta u, \bar{z})w_2 \rangle. \quad (4.1)$$

In particular, we have  $\langle L_n w_1 | w_2 \rangle = \langle w_1 | L_{-n} w_2 \rangle$ . We let

$\mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{W}}$  = the Hilbert space completion of  $\mathbb{W}$  under  $\langle \cdot | \cdot \rangle$ .

**Remark 4.3.** It is clear that  $\mathbb{W}_{(s)}$  is orthogonal to  $\mathbb{W}_{(t)}$  if  $s \neq t$ . From this, and from the construction of  $\tilde{L}_0$  in Sec. 1, it follows that  $\mathbb{W}(m)$  is orthogonal to  $\mathbb{W}(n)$  if  $m \neq n$ . We conclude that  $\langle \cdot | \cdot \rangle$  is **compatible with the  $L_0$ -grading** and the  $\tilde{L}_0$ -grading.

**Remark 4.4.** Assuming that the  $\mathbb{V}$ -module is equipped with an inner product  $\langle \cdot | \cdot \rangle$  compatible with the  $L_0$ -grading or the  $\tilde{L}_0$ -grading. Then there is a unique inner product on  $\mathbb{W}'$  compatible with its  $L_0$ -grading such that the map

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{C}_{\mathbb{W}} : \mathbb{W} &\rightarrow \mathbb{W}' & w &\mapsto \langle \cdot | w \rangle \\ (\text{so } \langle w_1 | w_2 \rangle &= \langle w_1, \mathbb{C}_{\mathbb{W}} w_2 \rangle \text{ if } w_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{W}) \end{aligned}$$

(abbreviated to  $\mathbb{C}$  when the context is clear) is antiunitary. Then, under the natural identification  $\mathbb{W}'' = \mathbb{W}$  we have

$$\mathbb{C}_{\mathbb{W}}^{-1} = \mathbb{C}_{\mathbb{W}'}$$

$\mathbb{C}_{\mathbb{W}}$  extends naturally to a linear map between the algebraic completions

$$\mathbb{C}_{\mathbb{W}} : \overline{\mathbb{W}} \rightarrow \overline{\mathbb{W}'} = \mathbb{W}^*$$

Then  $\mathbb{W}$  is unitary if and only if for each  $u \in \mathbb{V}$ ,  $w \in \mathbb{W}$ ,

$$Y_{\mathbb{W}}(u, z)w = \mathbb{C}_{Y_{\mathbb{W}'}}(\Theta u, \bar{z})\mathbb{C}w \quad (4.2)$$

From this we see that the inner product on  $\mathbb{W}'$  makes  $\mathbb{W}'$  a unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module.

*Proof of (4.1)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (4.2).* We have

$$\langle Y(u, z)w_1 | w_2 \rangle = \langle Y(u, z)w_1, \mathbb{C}w_2 \rangle = \langle w_1, Y'(u, z)\mathbb{C}w_2 \rangle = \langle w_1 | \mathbb{C}Y'(u, z)\mathbb{C}w_2 \rangle$$

which equals  $\langle w_1 | Y'(\Theta u, \bar{z})w_2 \rangle$  iff (4.2) is always true.  $\square$

Recall that if  $\mathbb{V}$  is unitary, then by [CKLW18, Prop. 5.3] (or by Prop. 11.2 with  $\mathbb{U} = \mathbb{V}$ ),  $\mathbb{V}$  is simple iff  $\mathbb{V}$  is of CFT-type.

**Theorem 4.5.** Let  $\mathbb{V}$  be a unitary VOA, and let  $\mathbb{W}$  be a unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. Let  $\text{Sp}(L_0)$  be the set of eigenvalues of  $L_0$  on  $\mathbb{W}$ . Then  $\text{Sp}(L_0) \subset [0, +\infty)$ .

Assume moreover that  $\mathbb{V}$  and  $\mathbb{W}$  are irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules. Then  $\text{Sp}(L_0) \subset (0, +\infty)$  if and only if  $\mathbb{W} \not\cong \mathbb{V}$ .

*Proof.* Immediate from Thm. 2.17.  $\square$

## 4.2 Conjugate conformal blocks

**Definition 4.6.** Let  $C$  be a Riemann surface. Define a new complex structure on  $C$  to be the unique one such that a function  $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  (where  $U \subset C$  is open) is holomorphic under this complex structure if and only if its complex conjugate  $\bar{f} : U \rightarrow \mathbb{C}, x \mapsto \overline{f(x)}$  is holomorphic under the original complex structure. Then  $C$ , together with the new complex structure, is called the **(complex) conjugate Riemann surface** of  $(C, \text{the original complex structure})$  and is denoted by  $C^*$ . Clearly  $C^{**} = C$ .

**Remark 4.7.** It is more convenient to regard  $C$  and  $C^*$  as two different sets. We let  $x^*$  denote the point of  $C^*$  that corresponds to the point  $x \in C$ . Then

$$* : C \rightarrow C^*$$

is an anti-equivalence of Riemann surfaces, and

$$C^{**} = C \quad * \circ * = \mathbf{1}_C : C \rightarrow C$$

**Definition 4.8.** If  $U \subset C$  is open and  $f \in \mathcal{O}(U)$ , we define  $f^* \in \mathcal{O}(U^*)$  (where  $U^*$  is considered as an open subset of  $C^*$ ) to be

$$f^*(x^*) = \overline{f(x)} \quad (\forall x \in U).$$

**Remark 4.9.** Assume that  $\eta \in \mathcal{O}(U)$  is univalent. Then for each  $f \in \mathcal{O}(U)$ ,

$$\partial_{\eta^*} f^* = (\partial_{\eta} f)^* \quad (4.3)$$

Using this relation, one easily computes the transition functions for the holomorphic tangent and cotangent bundles of  $C^*$  in terms of those of  $C$ . Also, if  $f$  is a meromorphic function on  $U$ , and if  $x \in U$  is such that  $\eta(x) = 0$ , then

$$\text{Res}_{x^*} f^* d\eta^* = \overline{\text{Res}_x f d\eta} \quad (4.4)$$

To see these relations (which can be checked locally), it suffices to assume that  $U, U^* \subset \mathbb{C}$ , that  $* : U \rightarrow U^*, z \mapsto \bar{z}$ , and that  $\eta$  is the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ . Then  $\eta^* = \bar{\eta}$ , and if  $f = \sum_n a_n z^n$  then  $f^* = \sum_n \bar{a}_n \bar{z}^n$ .

Let  $\mathfrak{X} = (C; x_1, \dots, x_N; \eta_1, \dots, \eta_N)$  be an  $N$ -pointed compact Riemann surface with local coordinates. Associate a unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}_i$  to each marked point  $x_i$  of  $\mathfrak{X}$ .

**Definition 4.10.** The **complex conjugate** of  $\mathfrak{X}$  is defined to be

$$\mathfrak{X}^* = (C^*; x_{\bullet}^*; \eta_{\bullet}^*) = (C^*; x_1^*, \dots, x_N^*; \eta_1^*, \dots, \eta_N^*)$$

Clearly  $\mathfrak{X}^{**} = \mathfrak{X}$ .

**Definition 4.11.** For each  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet})$ , define

$$\begin{aligned} \phi^* : \mathbb{W}'_{\bullet} &= \mathbb{W}'_1 \otimes \dots \otimes \mathbb{W}'_N \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \\ \phi^*(\mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes \dots \otimes \mathbb{C}w_N) &= \overline{\phi(w_1 \otimes \dots \otimes w_N)} \end{aligned}$$

(where  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, \dots, w_N \in \mathbb{W}_N$ ). Then

$$\phi^* \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}^*}^*(\mathbb{W}'_{\bullet}) \quad (4.5)$$

We call  $\phi^*$  the **conjugate conformal block** of  $\phi$ .

*Proof of (4.5).* There is an antilinear bijection

$$* : H^0(C, \mathcal{V}_C \otimes \omega_C(\star x_\bullet)) \rightarrow H^0(C^*, \mathcal{V}_{C^*} \otimes \omega_{C^*}(\star x_\bullet^*)), \quad \sigma \mapsto \sigma^*$$

defined as follows. Choose an open subset  $U \subset C$  and a univalent  $\eta \in \mathcal{O}(U)$ , and write  $\mathcal{U}_\eta(\eta)\sigma$  on  $U$  as a finite sum

$$\mathcal{U}_\eta(\eta)\sigma|_U = \sum_k v_k f_k d\eta \quad (v_k \in \mathbb{V}, f_k \in \mathcal{O}(U))$$

Then

$$\sigma^*|_{U^*} = \sum_k \Theta v_k \cdot f_k^* d\eta^*$$

One checks easily that this is well-defined and independent of the choice of  $\eta$ . Choose any  $w_\bullet \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet$  and let  $\mathbb{C}w_\bullet = \mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{C}w_N$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \phi^*(\sigma^* \cdot \mathbb{C}w_\bullet) &= \sum_{i,k} \text{Res}_{\eta_i^*=0} f_k^* \phi^*(\mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes Y(\Theta v_k, \eta_i^*) \mathbb{C}w_i \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{C}w_N) d\eta_i^* \\ &\stackrel{(4.2)}{=} \sum_{i,k} \text{Res}_{\eta_i^*=0} f_k^* \phi^*(\mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{C}Y(v_k, \overline{\eta_i^*}) w_i \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{C}w_N) d\eta_i^* \\ &= \sum_{i,k} \text{Res}_{\eta_i^*=0} \overline{f_k^* \phi(w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes Y(v_k, \overline{\eta_i^*}) w_i \otimes \cdots \otimes w_N) d\eta_i^*} \\ &\stackrel{(4.4)}{=} \sum_{i,k} \overline{\text{Res}_{\eta_i=0} f_k \phi(w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes Y(v_k, \eta_i) w_i \otimes \cdots \otimes w_N) d\eta_i} \\ &= \overline{\phi(\sigma \cdot w_\bullet)} \end{aligned}$$

So  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet)$  if and only if  $\phi^* \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}^*}^*(\mathbb{W}'_\bullet)$ . □

## 5 Reflection positive conformal blocks

In this section, we assume that  $\mathbb{V}$  is unitary and  $C_2$ -cofinite. We only consider unitary modules.

Consider an  $(N+1)$ -pointed compact Riemann surface with local coordinates

$$\mathfrak{X} = (C; x_\bullet, x'; \eta_\bullet, \xi) = (C; x_1, \dots, x_N, x'; \eta_1, \dots, \eta_N, \xi) \quad (5.1)$$

such that each connected component of  $C$  contains one of  $x_1, \dots, x_N$ . We assume that  $\xi$  is univalent on a neighborhood  $W'$  of  $x'$  that does not contain  $x_1, \dots, x_N$ . Choose  $r > 0$  such that

$$\xi(W') \supset \mathbb{D}_r$$

Associate unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules  $\mathbb{W}_1, \dots, \mathbb{W}_N, \mathbb{M}$  to  $x_1, \dots, x_N, x'$  respectively. Associate their contragredient modules  $\mathbb{W}'_1, \dots, \mathbb{W}'_N, \mathbb{M}'$  respectively to the marked points  $x_1^*, \dots, x_N^*, x'^*$  of  $\mathfrak{X}^*$ .



## 5.1 Sewing $\mathfrak{X}$ and $\mathfrak{X}^*$ , and reflection positive conformal blocks

Consider the disjoint union

$$\mathfrak{X} \sqcup \mathfrak{X}^* = (C \sqcup C^*; x_\bullet, x', x_\bullet^*, x'^*; \eta_\bullet, \xi, \eta_\bullet^*, \xi^*) \quad (5.2)$$

Assume  $0 < q < r^2$ , and define the connected sum along the pair of points  $x', x'^*$ :

$$\mathfrak{X} \#_q \mathfrak{X}^* := \mathcal{S}_q(\mathfrak{X} \sqcup \mathfrak{X}^*) \quad (5.3)$$

which has marked points  $x_\bullet, x_\bullet^*$  and local coordinates  $\eta_\bullet, \eta_\bullet^*$ .

**Definition 5.1.** Let  $\Omega \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X} \#_q \mathfrak{X}^*}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{W}'_\bullet)$ . We say that  $\Omega$  is **reflection positive**, if for each vector  $\mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet$  (not necessarily of the form  $w_\bullet = w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes w_N$ ) we have

$$\Omega(\mathbf{w} \otimes \mathbb{C}\mathbf{w}) \geq 0 \quad (5.4)$$

Here,  $\mathbb{C} : \mathbb{W}_\bullet \rightarrow \mathbb{W}_\bullet$  is the antiunitary map determined by

$$\mathbb{C}(w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes w_N) = \mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{C}w_N \quad (\forall w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, \dots, w_N \in \mathbb{W}_N)$$

If assumption (5.4) is weakened to

$$\Omega(\mathbf{w} \otimes \mathbb{C}\mathbf{w}) \in \mathbb{R} \quad \forall \mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet \quad (5.5)$$

or equivalently

$$\overline{\Omega(\mathbf{w}_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}\mathbf{w}_2)} = \Omega(\mathbf{w}_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\mathbf{w}_1) \quad \forall \mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2 \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet \quad (5.6)$$

we call  $\Omega$  **self-conjugate**. (This is a special case of Def. 6.5.)  $\square$

Choose  $\phi, \psi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{M})$ . Then  $\phi \otimes \psi^* : \mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{M} \otimes \mathbb{W}'_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{M}' \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is clearly a conformal block:

$$\phi \otimes \psi^* \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X} \sqcup \mathfrak{X}^*}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{M} \otimes \mathbb{W}'_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{M}')$$

The corresponding sewing of  $\phi \otimes \psi^*$ , written as

$$\phi \#_q \psi^* := \mathcal{S}_q(\phi \otimes \psi^*) : \mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{W}'_\bullet \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$$

satisfies that for any  $\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2 \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \phi \#_q \psi^*(\mathbf{w}_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}\mathbf{w}_2) &= \sum_{s \geq 0} \sum_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{A}_s} q^s \phi(\mathbf{w}_1 \otimes e_{\alpha,s}) \psi^*(\mathbb{C}\mathbf{w}_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}e_{\alpha,s}) \\ &= \sum_{s \geq 0} \sum_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{A}_s} q^s \phi(\mathbf{w}_1 \otimes e_{\alpha,s}) \overline{\psi(\mathbf{w}_2 \otimes e_{\alpha,s})} \end{aligned} \quad (5.7)$$

where  $\{e_{\alpha,s}\}_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{A}_s}$  is an orthonormal basis of the  $L_0$ -eigenspace  $\mathbb{W}_{(s)}$ , and we choose  $\arg q = 0$ . Let us express (5.7) in terms of the inner product of two vectors in a Hilbert space:

**Proposition 5.2.** Assume  $0 < q < r^2$ ,  $\arg q = 0$  and  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet} \otimes \mathbb{M})$ . Regard  $\phi$  as a linear map

$$T_{\phi} : \mathbb{W}_{\bullet} \rightarrow \overline{\mathbb{M}'}$$

Then for each  $\mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{W}_{\bullet}$ ,  $\sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\phi}(\mathbf{w})$  belongs to the Hilbert space completion  $\mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'}$ . Moreover, if  $\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2 \in \mathbb{W}_{\bullet}$ , and if  $\psi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet} \otimes \mathbb{M})$ , then

$$\langle \sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\phi}(\mathbf{w}_1) | \sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\psi}(\mathbf{w}_2) \rangle = \phi \#_q \psi^*(\mathbf{w}_1 \otimes \mathbb{C} \mathbf{w}_2) \quad (5.8)$$

*Proof.* We use the notations in (5.7). Then

$$\sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\phi}(\mathbf{w}) = \sum_{s \geq 0} \sum_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{A}_s} q^{s/2} \phi(\mathbf{w} \otimes e_{\alpha,s}) \mathbb{C} e_{\alpha,s}$$

To show that  $\sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\phi}(\mathbf{w}) \in \mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'}$ , we need to check that the square sum of the above coefficients is finite: By (5.7),

$$\sum_{s, \alpha} |q^{s/2} \phi(\mathbf{w} \otimes e_{\alpha,s})|^2 = \sum_{s, \alpha} q^s \phi(\mathbf{w} \otimes e_{\alpha,s}) \overline{\phi(\mathbf{w} \otimes e_{\alpha,s})} = \phi \#_q \phi^*(\mathbf{w} \otimes \mathbb{C} \mathbf{w})$$

converges absolutely by Thm. 3.6. This proves  $\sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\phi}(\mathbf{w}) \in \mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'}$ . We compute

$$\begin{aligned} & \langle \sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\phi}(\mathbf{w}_1) | \sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\psi}(\mathbf{w}_2) \rangle \\ &= \sum_{s, t \geq 0} \sum_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{A}_s, \beta \in \mathfrak{A}_t} \langle q^{s/2} \phi(\mathbf{w}_1 \otimes e_{\alpha,s}) \mathbb{C} e_{\alpha,s} | q^{t/2} \psi(\mathbf{w}_2 \otimes e_{\beta,t}) \mathbb{C} e_{\beta,t} \rangle \\ &= \sum_{s \geq 0} \sum_{\alpha \in \mathfrak{A}_s} q^s \phi(\mathbf{w}_1 \otimes e_{\alpha,s}) \overline{\psi(\mathbf{w}_2 \otimes e_{\alpha,s})} \end{aligned}$$

which equals (5.7). □

**Corollary 5.3.** Assume  $0 < q < r^2$ ,  $\arg q = 0$  and  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet} \otimes \mathbb{M})$ . Then  $\phi \#_q \phi^*$  is reflection positive.

*Proof.* Choose  $\mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{W}_{\bullet}$ . Then by Prop. 5.2,

$$\phi \#_q \phi^*(\mathbf{w} \otimes \mathbb{C} \mathbf{w}) = \|\sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\phi} \mathbf{w}\|^2 \geq 0.$$

□

## 5.2 Reflection positivity is preserved by change-of-coordinates and translations

Let us show that reflection positivity is preserved by suitable change of coordinates. Recall that  $\mathfrak{X} = (C; x_{\bullet}, x'; \eta_{\bullet}, \xi) = (5.1)$ . Choose a new local coordinate  $\mu_i$  for each  $x_i$ . Let

$$\mathfrak{Y} = (C; x_{\bullet}, x'; \eta_{\bullet}, \xi) = (C; x_1, \dots, x_N, x'; \mu_1, \dots, \mu_N, \xi)$$

and let  $\mathfrak{Y} \#_q \mathfrak{Y}^*$  also denote the sewing of  $\mathfrak{Y}$  and  $\mathfrak{Y}^*$  along  $x', x'^*$  with respect to  $\xi, \xi^*$  and parameter  $q$ . We assume  $0 < q < r^2$  and  $\arg q = 0$ .

**Proposition 5.4.** Let  $\Omega \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}_{\#_q}^* \mathfrak{X}^*}(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{W}'_\bullet)$  be reflection positive. Define a linear functional  $\Upsilon : \mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{W}'_\bullet \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  by

$$\Upsilon = \Omega \circ (\mathcal{U}_0(\eta_1 \circ \mu_1^{-1}) \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathcal{U}_0(\eta_N \circ \mu_N^{-1}) \otimes \mathcal{U}_0(\eta_1^* \circ (\mu_1^*)^{-1}) \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathcal{U}_0(\eta_N^* \circ (\mu_N^*)^{-1}))$$

which is an element of  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{Y}_{\#_q}^* \mathfrak{Y}^*}(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{W}'_\bullet)$  (cf. Prop. 2.20). Assume that the arguments are chosen such that for each  $i$ ,

$$\arg(\eta_i \circ \mu_i^{-1})'(0) = -\arg(\eta_i^* \circ (\mu_i^*)^{-1})'(0). \quad (5.9)$$

Then  $\Upsilon$  is reflection positive.

Note that

$$(\eta_i \circ \mu_i^{-1})'(0) = \overline{(\eta_i^* \circ (\mu_i^*)^{-1})'(0)}. \quad (5.10)$$

(Indeed, write  $\eta_i = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_+} a_n \mu_i^n$  where  $a_n \in \mathbb{C}$ . Then  $\eta_i^* = \sum_n \overline{a_n} (\mu_i^*)^n$ . Then the above relation says  $a_1 = \overline{\overline{a_1}}$ .) Therefore, the arguments can be chosen to satisfy (5.9).

*Proof.* The fact that

$$\eta_i = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}_+} a_n \mu_i^n \implies \eta_i^* = \sum_n \overline{a_n} (\mu_i^*)^n$$

implies that

$$\mathcal{U}_0(\eta_i \circ \mu_i^{-1}) = a_0^{L_0} \exp\left(\sum_{n \geq 1} c_n L_n\right) \implies \mathcal{U}_0(\eta_i^* \circ (\mu_i^*)^{-1}) = \overline{a_0}^{L_0} \exp\left(\sum_{n \geq 1} \overline{c_n} L_n\right)$$

Therefore, by (5.9), we have  $\mathbb{C} \cdot a_0^{L_0} = \overline{a_0}^{L_0} \cdot \mathbb{C}$ , and hence

$$\mathbb{C} \cdot \mathcal{U}_0(\eta_i \circ \mu_i^{-1}) = \mathcal{U}_0(\eta_i^* \circ (\mu_i^*)^{-1}) \cdot \mathbb{C} \quad (5.11)$$

This relation, together with the definition of  $\Upsilon$ , immediately shows that  $\Upsilon$  is reflection positive.  $\square$

Reflection positivity is also preserved by translations:

**Proposition 5.5.** For each  $1 \leq i \leq N$ , choose a neighborhood  $U_i$  of  $x_i$  on which  $\eta_i$  is defined and univalent, and choose  $r_i > 0$  such that

$$\eta_i(U_i) \supset \mathbb{D}_{r_i}$$

Assume that  $U_1, \dots, U_N$  are mutually disjoint. Choose a reflection positive  $\Omega \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}_{\#_q}^* \mathfrak{X}^*}(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{W}'_\bullet)$ . Choose  $\tau_i \in \mathbb{D}_{r_i}$  for each  $i$ . Let

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{X}_{\tau_\bullet} &= (C; \eta_1^{-1}(\tau_1), \dots, \eta_N^{-1}(\tau_N); \eta_1 - \tau_1, \dots, \eta_N - \tau_N) \\ \mathfrak{X}_{\tau_\bullet}^* &= (\mathfrak{X}_{\tau_\bullet})^* = (C^*; (\eta_1^*)^{-1}(\overline{\tau_1}), \dots, (\eta_N^*)^{-1}(\overline{\tau_N}); \eta_1^* - \overline{\tau_1}, \eta_N^* - \overline{\tau_N}) \end{aligned}$$

Consider the linear functional  $\Omega_{\tau_\bullet} : \mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{W}'_\bullet \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  defined by

$$\Omega_{\tau_\bullet}(w_\bullet \otimes w'_\bullet) = \Omega(e^{\tau_1 L_{-1}} w_1 \otimes \dots \otimes e^{\tau_N L_{-1}} w_N \otimes e^{\overline{\tau_1} L_{-1}} w'_1 \otimes \dots \otimes e^{\overline{\tau_N} L_{-1}} w'_N) \quad (5.12)$$

which (by Cor. 3.7) converges absolutely (as a power series of  $\tau_1, \dots, \tau_N, \overline{\tau_1}, \dots, \overline{\tau_N}$ ) and

$$\Omega_{\tau_\bullet} \in \mathcal{J}_{\mathfrak{X}_{\tau_\bullet} \#_q \mathfrak{X}_{\overline{\tau}_\bullet}}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{W}'_\bullet)$$

Then  $\Omega_{\tau_\bullet}$  is reflection positive.

*Proof.* For each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , define a linear map  $R_n$  on  $\mathbb{W}_\bullet$  by

$$R_n w_\bullet = \sum_{k_1, \dots, k_N=0}^n \frac{(\tau_1 L_{-1})^{k_1} w_1}{k_1!} \otimes \dots \otimes \frac{(\tau_N L_{-1})^{k_N} w_N}{k_N!}$$

Choose any  $\mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet$ . Then  $\Omega(R_n \mathbf{w} \otimes \mathbb{C} R_n \mathbf{w}) \geq 0$  by the reflection positivity of  $\Omega$ . Since (5.12) converges absolutely, we have

$$\Omega_{\tau_\bullet}(\mathbf{w} \otimes \mathbb{C} \mathbf{w}) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \Omega(R_n \mathbf{w} \otimes \mathbb{C} R_n \mathbf{w})$$

which is  $\geq 0$ . □

### 5.3 Relationship to the positivity of endomorphisms

We still assume the setting at the beginning of this section. We assume  $0 < q < r^2$  and  $\arg q = 0$ .

Let  $A \in \text{End}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{M}')$ , namely,  $A$  is a linear map on  $\mathbb{M}'$  intertwining the action of  $\mathbb{V}$ . In particular,  $[L_0, A] = 0$  implies that  $A$  preserves the  $L_0$ -grading of  $\mathbb{M}'$ . Thus, we can extend  $A$  to a linear map on the algebraic completion  $\overline{\mathbb{M}'} = \mathbb{M}^*$ .

**Remark 5.6.** Assume for simplicity that  $\mathbb{M}$  and (hence)  $\mathbb{M}'$  are semisimple. Then  $A : \mathbb{M}^* \rightarrow \mathbb{M}^*$  restricts to a bounded linear map on the Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'}$ . To see this, write  $\mathbb{M}$  and  $\mathbb{M}'$  as finite orthogonal direct sums of irreducible unitary submodules

$$\mathbb{M} = \bigoplus_n^{\perp} \mathbb{X}_n \otimes_{\mathbb{C}} \mathcal{I}_n \quad \mathbb{M}' = \bigoplus_n^{\perp} \mathbb{X}'_n \otimes_{\mathbb{C}} \mathcal{I}_n^* \quad (5.13)$$

Here  $\mathbb{X}_n$  is irreducible and unitary, each  $\mathcal{I}_n$  is a finite-dimensional Hilbert space, and  $\mathbb{X}_m \not\cong \mathbb{X}_n$  if  $m \neq n$ . Then  $A$  on  $\mathbb{M}'$  is of the form

$$A = \bigoplus_n \mathbf{1} \otimes A_n \quad (5.14)$$

where  $A_n : \mathcal{I}_n^* \rightarrow \mathcal{I}_n^*$  is linear. So  $A$  is bounded and extends uniquely to a bounded linear map on

$$\mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'} = \bigoplus_n \mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{X}'_n} \otimes \mathcal{I}_n^*.$$

Assume  $\mathbb{M}$  to be semisimple. Choose  $A \in \text{End}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{M}')$  and  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet} \otimes \mathbb{M})$ . Define  $A\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet} \otimes \mathbb{M})$  to be

$$A\phi = \phi \circ (\mathbf{1}_{\mathbb{W}_{\bullet}} \otimes A^{\dagger}). \quad (5.15)$$

where  $A^{\dagger} : \mathbb{M} \rightarrow \mathbb{M}$  is the transpose of  $A$ . Then

$$T_{A\phi} = A \cdot T_{\phi} \quad (5.16)$$

Let  $0 < q < r^2$  with  $\arg q = 0$ . From Prop. 5.2, it is clear that if  $A$  is **positive** (namely, if  $\langle A\mathbf{m}' | \mathbf{m}' \rangle \geq 0$  for all  $\mathbf{m}' \in \mathbb{M}'$ , equivalently, for all  $\mathbf{m}' \in \mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'}$ ), then  $A\phi \#_q \phi^*$  is reflection positive. We record this result:

$$A \geq 0 \quad \implies \quad A\phi \#_q \phi^* \text{ is reflection positive} \quad (5.17)$$

Our goal is to show the opposite direction under a natural density condition.

**Definition 5.7.** Let  $\mathbb{W}$  be a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module, and let  $\mathbb{X}$  be a subspace of the algebraic completion  $\overline{\mathbb{W}}$ . We say that  $\mathbb{X}$  is  $\sigma(\overline{\mathbb{W}}, \mathbb{W}')$ -**dense** (or **dense in the**  $\sigma(\overline{\mathbb{W}}, \mathbb{W}')$ -**topology**) if the only vector  $w' \in \mathbb{W}'$  that is orthogonal to  $\mathbb{X}$  (namely,  $\langle w', w \rangle = 0$  for all  $w \in \mathbb{X}$ ) is 0.

Recall the notation in (5.1). The following density result is close in spirit to [Ten19c, Lem. 3.6].

**Proposition 5.8.** Let  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet} \otimes \mathbb{M})$ , and assume that the subspace  $T_{\phi}(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet})$  (the range of  $T_{\phi}$ ) of  $\overline{\mathbb{M}'}$  is  $\sigma(\overline{\mathbb{M}'}, \mathbb{M})$ -dense. Assume that  $C = \mathbb{P}^1$  and the local coordinate  $\xi$  is Möbius. Then  $\sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\phi}(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet})$  is dense in  $\mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'}$  (under the norm topology).

Note that if  $T_{\phi}(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet})$  is  $\sigma(\overline{\mathbb{M}'}, \mathbb{M})$ -dense in  $\overline{\mathbb{M}'}$ , then so is  $\sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\phi}(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet})$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{X} = \sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\phi}(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet})$  which is a subspace of  $\mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'}$ . Let us show that  $\mathcal{X}^{\text{cl}} = \mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'}$ . Choose any  $\psi \in \mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'}$  orthogonal to  $\mathcal{X}$ . We need to show that  $\psi = 0$ . Let  $L_0$  act on  $\mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'}$  as an unbounded self-adjoint operator.

Step 1. We claim that for each  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $e^{itL_0}\psi$  is orthogonal to  $\mathcal{X}$ . Suppose this is true. For each eigenvalue  $s \geq 0$  of  $L_0$ , let  $P_s$  be the projection of  $\mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'}$  onto  $\mathbb{M}'_{(s)}$ . Then it suffices to prove  $P_s\psi = 0$  for each  $s$ . Note that  $P_s = g(L_0)$  where  $g : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a smooth function with compact support such that  $g(s) = 1$  and  $g(t) = 0$  if  $t \neq s$  is an eigenvalue of  $L_0$ . Choose a rapidly decreasing function  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  such that  $\int_{\mathbb{R}} f(x)e^{ixy}dx = g(y)$ . Then by spectral theory,

$$P_s\psi = \int_{\mathbb{R}} f(x)e^{ixL_0}\psi dx$$

and hence  $P_s\psi$  is orthogonal to  $\mathcal{X}$ . This proves that  $P_s\psi = 0$  because  $\mathcal{X}$  is  $\sigma(\overline{\mathbb{M}'}, \mathbb{M})$ -dense in  $\overline{\mathbb{M}'}$ .

Step 2. Let us prove the claim in step 1 that  $e^{itL_0}\psi$  is orthogonal to  $\mathcal{X}$ , i.e. orthogonal to  $\sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\phi}(\mathbf{w})$  for all  $\mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{W}_{\bullet}$ . Note that if  $0 < \lambda < r/\sqrt{q}$  (note that  $r/\sqrt{q} > 1$ ) and  $\arg \lambda = 0$ , then  $\lambda^{L_0} \sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\phi}(\mathbf{w})$  belongs to the Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'}$  by Prop. 5.2. Namely,  $\sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\phi}(\mathbf{w})$  belongs to the domain of the self-adjoint operator  $\lambda^{L_0}$ . Therefore  $\tau \mapsto e^{i\tau L_0} \sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{\phi}(\mathbf{w})$

is a holomorphic function on a strip  $\{\tau \in \mathbb{C} : -\varepsilon < \text{Im}(\tau) < \varepsilon\}$  for some  $\varepsilon > 0$  (cf. for instance [Tak, Chapter VI, Lem. 2.3]).

Suppose we can prove that  $T_\phi(\mathbb{W}_\bullet)$  is  $L_0$ -invariant. Then for each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,  $\psi$  is orthogonal to  $\sqrt{q}^{L_0} L_0^n T_\phi(\mathbf{w})$ . Therefore

$$\partial_\tau^n \langle e^{i\tau L_0} \sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_\phi(\mathbf{w}) | \psi \rangle = i^n \langle e^{i\tau L_0} \sqrt{q}^{L_0} L_0^n T_\phi(\mathbf{w}) | \psi \rangle$$

equals zero when  $\tau = 1$ . Therefore, since the function  $\langle e^{i\tau L_0} \sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_\phi(\mathbf{w}) | \psi \rangle$  of  $\tau$  is holomorphic on the strip, this function is constantly zero. So  $\langle \sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_\phi(\mathbf{w}) | e^{-itL_0} \psi \rangle = 0$  for all  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ . This finishes the proof.

Step 3. It remains to prove that  $T_\phi(\mathbb{W}_\bullet)$  is  $L_0$ -invariant. Here we use the fact that  $C = \mathbb{P}^1$  and that  $\xi$  is Möbius. After a biholomorphic transformation of  $\mathfrak{X}$ , we may assume that  $x' = \infty$  and  $\xi = 1/\zeta$  where  $\zeta$  is the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ . Namely,

$$\mathfrak{X} = (\mathbb{P}^1; x_1, \dots, x_N, \infty; \eta_1, \dots, \eta_N, 1/\zeta).$$

By Prop. 2.20, we may change each local coordinate  $\eta_i$  (where  $1 \leq i \leq N$ ) to  $\zeta - x_i$ . Then the invariance of  $T_\phi(\mathbb{W}_\bullet)$  under  $L_0$  follows immediately from

$$L_0 T_\phi(w_1 \otimes \dots \otimes w_N) = \sum_{i=1}^N T_\phi(w_1 \otimes \dots \otimes (L_0 + x_i L_{-1}) w_i \otimes \dots \otimes w_N), \quad (5.18)$$

a special case of the Jacobi identity (2.12). □

**Remark 5.9.** In Prop. 5.8, if we do not assume  $C = \mathbb{P}^1$  or that  $\xi$  is Möbius, proving norm-density would be more difficult due to the absence of a relation like (5.18).

**Theorem 5.10.** Let  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_\mathfrak{X}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{M})$ , and assume that the subspace  $T_\phi(\mathbb{W}_\bullet)$  of  $\overline{\mathbb{M}}'$  is  $\sigma(\overline{\mathbb{M}}', \mathbb{M})$ -dense. Assume that  $C = \mathbb{P}^1$  and that the local coordinate  $\xi$  is Möbius. Assume that  $\mathbb{M}$  is semisimple, and choose  $A \in \text{End}_\mathbb{V}(\mathbb{M}')$ . Then the following are equivalent.

- (1)  $A \geq 0$ , namely,  $\langle A \mathbf{m}' | \mathbf{m}' \rangle \geq 0$  for all  $\mathbf{m}' \in \mathbb{M}'$  (equivalently, for all  $\mathbf{m}' \in \mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'}$ ).
- (2)  $A\phi \# \phi^*$  is reflection positive.

Note that  $A \geq 0$  is equivalent to that  $A_n \geq 0$  for each  $A_n$  in (5.14).

*Proof.* (1) $\Rightarrow$ (2) was explained in (5.14). Assume (2), then by Prop. 5.2 and  $T_{A\phi} = AT_\phi$ , for each  $\mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet$ , we have

$$\langle A \sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_\phi \mathbf{w} | \sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_\phi \mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle \sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_{A\phi} \mathbf{w} | \sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_\phi \mathbf{w} \rangle = A\phi \#_q \phi^*(\mathbf{w} \otimes \mathbb{C} \mathbf{w}),$$

which is  $\geq 0$  by (2). Therefore  $A \geq 0$  because  $A$  is bounded and  $\sqrt{q}^{L_0} T_\phi(\mathbb{W}_\bullet)$  is dense in  $\mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{M}'}$  (Prop. 5.8). □

**Lemma 5.11.** Under the assumptions of Thm. 5.10, we have  $A = A^*$  if and only if  $A\phi \# \phi^*$  is self-conjugate (cf. Def. 5.1).

*Proof.* Same as the proof Thm. 5.10. □

The remaining task is to find a useful criterion on the  $\sigma(\overline{\mathbb{M}'}, \mathbb{M})$ -density of  $T_\phi(\mathbb{W}_\bullet)$ .

**Theorem 5.12.** Choose  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_\mathfrak{X}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{M})$ . Assume that  $\mathbb{M}$  is semisimple, and let  $\mathbb{M} = \bigoplus_n \mathbb{X}_n \otimes_{\mathbb{C}} \mathcal{I}_n$  be a (finite) orthogonal irreducible decomposition as in Rem. 5.6. For each  $n$ , define a linear map

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_n : \mathcal{I}_n &\rightarrow \mathcal{T}_\mathfrak{X}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{X}_n) \\ \gamma &\mapsto \left( \mathbf{w} \otimes \mathfrak{x} \in \mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{X}_n \mapsto \phi(\mathbf{w} \otimes (\mathfrak{x} \otimes \gamma)) \right) \end{aligned} \quad (5.19)$$

Then the following are equivalent.

- (1) For each  $n$ , the linear map  $\Phi_n$  is injective.
- (2)  $T_\phi(\mathbb{W}_\bullet)$  is  $\sigma(\overline{\mathbb{M}'}, \mathbb{M})$ -dense in  $\overline{\mathbb{M}'}$ .

The proof we give below is similar to that of [Gui19a, Prop. A.3]. Indeed, Prop. A.3 is sufficient for the purpose of this article. Thm. 5.12, as a generalization of Prop. A.3, is stated and proved here for the sake of completeness.

*Proof.* Let  $\mathbb{Y}$  be the subspace of vectors of  $\mathbb{M}$  orthogonal to  $T_\phi(\mathbb{W}_\bullet)$ . If we let  $\tilde{\mathbb{Y}}$  denote the  $\mathbb{V}$ -submodule of  $\mathbb{M}$  generated by  $\mathbb{Y}$ , then by Prop. 2.19, the restriction of  $\phi$  to  $\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \tilde{\mathbb{Y}}$  is zero. This implies that  $\mathbb{Y} = \tilde{\mathbb{Y}}$ . Therefore,  $\mathbb{Y}$  is a (unitary)  $\mathbb{V}$ -submodule of  $\mathbb{M}$ . (Note that when  $C = \mathbb{P}^1$  and  $\xi$  is Möbius, similar to Step 3 of the proof of Prop. 5.8, one can use the Jacobi identity (2.12) to show that  $\mathbb{Y}$  is  $\mathbb{V}$ -invariant.)

Note that (2) holds iff  $\mathbb{Y} = 0$ . Thus (2) $\Rightarrow$ (1) is obvious: Suppose that (1) is not true. Choose  $n$  and choose a non-zero  $\gamma \in \mathcal{I}_n$  such that  $\Phi_n(\gamma) = 0$ . Then  $\mathbb{Y}$  contains  $\mathbb{X}_n \otimes \mathbb{C}\gamma$ , which is non-zero. So (2) is not true.

Now suppose that (2) is not true. Then  $\mathbb{Y}$  is a non-zero (semisimple)  $\mathbb{V}$ -submodule of  $\mathbb{M}$ . Thus, according to the decomposition  $\mathbb{M} = \bigoplus_n \mathbb{X}_n \otimes_{\mathbb{C}} \mathcal{I}_n$ ,  $\mathbb{Y}$  must contain an irreducible submodule  $\mathbb{Y}_0$  isomorphic to  $\mathbb{X}_n$  for some  $n$ . The projection of  $\mathbb{Y}_0$  onto  $\mathbb{X}_m \otimes \mathcal{I}_m$  must be zero if  $m \neq n$  (since  $\mathbb{X}_m \not\cong \mathbb{X}_n$ ). So  $\mathbb{Y}_0 \subset \mathbb{X}_n \otimes \mathcal{I}_n$ . So  $\mathbb{Y}_0 = \mathbb{X}_n \otimes \mathbb{C}\gamma$  for some nonzero  $\gamma \in \mathcal{I}_n$ . Hence  $\Phi_n(\gamma) = 0$ . So (1) does not hold.  $\square$

**Remark 5.13.** Condition (1) in Thm. 5.12 can be written more explicitly. Write

$$\mathbb{M} = \bigoplus_n \underbrace{(\mathbb{X}_n \oplus \cdots \oplus \mathbb{X}_n)}_{k_n \text{ pieces}}$$

where each  $\mathbb{X}_n$  is irreducible, and  $\mathbb{X}_m \not\cong \mathbb{X}_n$  if  $m \neq n$ . For each  $n$  and each  $1 \leq l \leq k_n$ , let  $\phi_{n,l} \in \mathcal{T}_\mathfrak{X}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet \otimes \mathbb{X}_n)$  be the restriction of  $\phi$  to the  $l$ -th component of  $\mathbb{X}_n \oplus \cdots \oplus \mathbb{X}_n$  in the above decomposition. Then condition (1) means that  $\phi_{n,1}, \dots, \phi_{n,k_n}$  are linearly independent for each  $n$ .

## 6 Positive trinions and basic conformal blocks

Let  $\mathbb{V}$  be unitary. Unless otherwise stated,  $\mathfrak{X} = (C; x_\bullet; \eta_\bullet)$  denotes an  $N$ -pointed compact Riemann surface, and to each marked point  $x_i$  a unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}_i$  is associated.



**Convention 6.1.** A 3-pointed sphere  $\mathbb{P}^1$  with local coordinates is called a **trinion**. Unless otherwise stated, when sewing two trinions  $\mathfrak{P} = (\mathbb{P}^1; x_1, x_2, x_3; \eta_1, \eta_2, \eta_3)$  and  $\mathfrak{Q} = (\mathbb{P}^1; y_1, y_2, y_3; \mu_1, \mu_2, \mu_3)$ , we always assume that the sewing is along their last marked points  $x_3, y_3$ .

## 6.1 Self-conjugate Riemann surfaces and conformal blocks

**Definition 6.2.** Suppose that there is a biholomorphism  $\tau : C^* \rightarrow C$ . Then  $\mathfrak{X}$  together with the anti-biholomorphism  $\star = \tau \circ * : C \rightarrow C$  is called **self-conjugate** if there is a (necessarily unique) bijection  $* : \{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, n\}$  satisfying that for each  $1 \leq i \leq N$  and  $x \in C$ ,

$$\star \circ \star = \mathbf{1}_C \quad (6.1a)$$

$$x_i^* = x_{i^*} \quad (6.1b)$$

$$\eta_{i^*}(x^*) = \overline{\eta_i(x)} \quad (6.1c)$$

Clearly  $i^{**} = i$ . As for the  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules, we assume also that

$$\mathbb{W}_{i^*} = \mathbb{W}'_i \quad (6.1d)$$

$$\mathbb{W}_i = \mathbb{W}'_i = \mathbb{V} \quad (\text{if } i^* = i) \quad (6.1e)$$

where, in (6.1e), we identify  $\mathbb{V}$  and  $\mathbb{V}'$  via the unitary isomorphism

$$\mathbb{C}\Theta : \mathbb{V} \rightarrow \mathbb{V}'$$

so that  $\mathbb{C} = \Theta$  on  $\mathbb{V}$ .

**Convention 6.3.** Suppose that  $\mathfrak{X}$  is viewed as a self-conjugate  $N$ -pointed surface. Then we identify  $C^*$  with  $C$  via  $\tau$  so that  $\star = *$ . We call  $* : C \rightarrow C$  the **involution** of  $\mathfrak{X}$ . Then (6.1c) means

$$(\eta_i)^* = \eta_{i^*} \quad (6.2)$$

We thus have (recall Def. 4.10)

$$\mathfrak{X}^* = (C; x_{1^*}, \dots, x_{N^*}; \eta_{1^*}, \dots, \eta_{N^*}) \quad (6.3)$$

Therefore,  $\mathfrak{X}$  and  $\mathfrak{X}^*$  differ by a permutation of marked points.

The advantage of identifying  $\star$  with  $*$  is indicated by the following example.

**Example 6.4.** If we let  $\mathfrak{X}$  be (5.1) (which is  $(N + 1)$ -pointed) and assume the setting of (5.2) and (5.3), then  $\mathfrak{X}_{\#_q} \mathfrak{X}^*$  is naturally a self-conjugate  $2N$ -pointed compact Riemann surface with local coordinates: the involution  $*$  on the sewn Riemann surface  $\mathcal{S}_q(C \sqcup C^*)$  is defined by sending any point  $p \in C$  which is not discarded in the sewing process to  $p^*$  in  $C^*$ .

Recall Def. 4.11 about the definition of conjugate conformal blocks. If  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet})$ , then  $\phi^* : \mathbb{W}_1^* \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{W}_N^* \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is its complex conjugate. Therefore  $\phi^*$ , composed with the permutation  $\mathbb{W}_{\bullet} \rightarrow \mathbb{W}_{\bullet}^*$  (sending  $w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes w_N$  to  $w_1^* \otimes \cdots \otimes w_N^*$ ), is clearly an element of  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet})$ . Whenever this conformal block equals  $\phi$ , we say that  $\phi$  is **self-conjugate**. To be more explicit, we make the following definition:

**Definition 6.5.** Let  $\mathfrak{X}$  be self-conjugate. A conformal block  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_{\bullet})$  is called **self-conjugate** if for each  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, \dots, w_N \in \mathbb{W}_N$  we have

$$\phi(\mathbb{C}w_1^* \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{C}w_N^*) = \overline{\phi(w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes w_N)} \quad (6.4)$$

## 6.2 Positive trinions

Recall that an anti-biholomorphism  $\star : C \rightarrow C$  satisfying  $\star \circ \star = 1_C$  is called an **involution of  $C$** . Let us classify involutions of  $\mathbb{P}^1$  having fixed points. (Note that the involution  $z \mapsto -1/\bar{z}$  does not have fixed points.) Choose  $x_1, x_2, x_3 \in \mathbb{P}^1$  such that  $x_1^* = x_2$  and  $x_3^* = x_3$ . By a Möbius transformation, it suffices to assume for instance  $x_1 = 0, x_2 = \infty, x_3 = 1$ .

**Example 6.6.** Let  $\star : \mathbb{P}^1 \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^1$  be an involution having fixed points. Let  $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $t \in \mathbb{R} \cup \{\infty\}$ .

(a) If  $0^* = \infty$  and  $(e^{i\theta})^* = e^{i\theta}$ , then  $z^* = 1/\bar{z}$  for all  $z \in \mathbb{P}^1$ .

(b) If  $i^* = -i$  and  $t^* = t$ , then  $z^* = \bar{z}$  for all  $z \in \mathbb{P}^1$ .

Consequently, if  $x_1, x_2, x_3 \in \mathbb{P}^1$  are chosen, then there exists a unique involution of  $\mathbb{P}^1$  fixing  $x_3$  and exchanging  $x_1, x_2$ .

*Proof.* Choose an involution  $\star$ . Then the composition of  $\star$  and  $z \mapsto \bar{z}$  is a Möbius transformation of  $\mathbb{P}^1$ . It is well-known that Möbius transformations are uniquely determined by their values on three distinct points. So the involutions  $\star$  satisfying (a) resp. (b) are unique. And clearly  $\star : z \mapsto 1/\bar{z}$  (resp.  $\star : z \mapsto \bar{z}$ ) satisfies the requirements in (a) resp. (b).  $\square$

Recall Conv. 6.3.

**Definition 6.7.** Let  $\mathfrak{P} = (\mathbb{P}^1; x_1, x_2, x_3; \eta_1, \eta_2, \eta_3)$  be a self-conjugate trinion. Assume that  $\eta_3$  is Möbius. Assume that

$$x_1^* = x_2 \quad x_3^* = x_3$$

(and hence  $1^* = 2, 3^* = 3$ ). Then we automatically have

$$\text{Im}(\eta_3(x_1)) \cdot \text{Im}(\eta_3(x_2)) < 0. \quad (6.5)$$

We say that  $\mathfrak{P}$  is a **positive trinion** (or a positive pair-of-pants) if

$$\text{Im}(\eta_3(x_1)) < 0, \quad \text{Im}(\eta_3(x_2)) > 0.$$

We say that  $\mathfrak{P}$  is a **standard positive trinion** if

$$\eta_3(x_1) \in i\mathbb{R}_{<0} \quad \eta_3(x_2) \in i\mathbb{R}_{<0}$$

Relation (6.5) follows from the proof of the next property.

**Proposition 6.8.** *Any positive trinion is equivalent to the positive trinion*

$$\mathfrak{P}_- = (\mathbb{P}^1; a + b\mathbf{i}, a - b\mathbf{i}, \infty; \eta, \eta^*, 1/\zeta) \quad (6.6)$$

where  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $b > 0$ ,  $\zeta$  is the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ ,  $\eta$  is a local coordinate at  $a + b\mathbf{i}$ , and

$$\eta^*(z) = \overline{\eta(\bar{z})}$$

The involution of  $\mathbb{P}^1$  is  $z^* = \bar{z}$ . Moreover,  $\mathfrak{P}$  is standard iff  $a = 0$ .

*Proof.* If  $\mathfrak{X}$  is a self-conjugate 3-pointed sphere with local coordinates satisfying  $x_1^* = x_2, x_3^* = x_3$ , then  $\mathfrak{X}$  is equivalent to

$$\mathfrak{X}_1 = (\mathbb{P}^1; \mathbf{i}, -\mathbf{i}, \infty; \mu, \mu^*, \xi)$$

where (by Exp. 6.6) the involution  $*$  is given by  $z^* = \bar{z}$ . So  $\mu^*(\bar{z}) = \overline{\mu(z)}$ .  $\xi$  is a Möbius local coordinate of  $\infty$ . So  $\xi$  is of the form

$$\xi(z) = 1/(a + bz)$$

where  $a, b \in \mathbb{C}$  and  $b \neq 0$ . Since  $\xi^*(z) = 1/(\bar{a} + \bar{b}z)$  equals  $\xi(z)$ , we have  $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ . This proves (6.5). Clearly  $\mathfrak{X}_1$  is equivalent to (6.6) via the biholomorphism  $z \in \mathbb{P}^1 \mapsto a + bz \in \mathbb{P}^1$ . Since  $\mathfrak{P}$  is a positive trinion, we must have  $b > 0$ .  $\square$

The subscript  $-$  in  $\mathfrak{P}_-$  indicates the fact that the real line  $\mathbb{R}$  is the **equator** of  $\mathfrak{P}_-$  (namely, the set of points fixed by the involution). Likewise, the unit circle  $\mathbb{S}^1$  is the equator of  $\mathfrak{P}_\circ$  defined below:

**Proposition 6.9.** *Any positive trinion is equivalent to the positive trinion*

$$\mathfrak{P}_\circ = \left( \mathbb{P}^1; \gamma, 1/\bar{\gamma}, \mathbf{i}; \mu, \mu^*, \frac{\mathbf{i}(\zeta - \mathbf{i})}{\zeta + \mathbf{i}} \right) \quad (6.7)$$

where  $\gamma \in \mathbb{D}_1$ ,  $\zeta$  is the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ ,  $\mu$  is a local coordinate at  $\gamma$ , and

$$\mu^*(z) = \overline{\mu(1/\bar{z})}$$

The involution of  $\mathbb{P}^1$  is  $z^* = 1/\bar{z}$ . Moreover,  $\mathfrak{P}_\circ$  is standard iff  $\gamma \in \mathbb{D}_1 \cap \mathbf{i}\mathbb{R}$ .

*Proof.* (6.7) is equivalent to (6.6) via the biholomorphism  $z \in \mathbb{P}^1 \mapsto \frac{z+\mathbf{i}}{\mathbf{i}(z-\mathbf{i})} \in \mathbb{P}^1$ .  $\square$

### 6.3 Basic conformal blocks associated to positive trinions

**Theorem 6.10.** *Let  $\mathbb{W}$  be a unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. There exists, for each positive trinion*

$$\mathfrak{P} = (\mathbb{P}^1; x_1, x_2, x_3; \eta_1, \eta_2, \eta_3), \quad (6.8)$$

a self-conjugate conformal block  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}} \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{P}}^*(\mathbb{W} \otimes \mathbb{W}' \otimes \mathbb{V})$  depending only on the equivalence class of  $\mathfrak{P}$ , such that the following properties are satisfied:

(a) Let  $\zeta$  be the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ . If we choose positive trinion

$$\mathfrak{P}_\circ = \left( \mathbb{P}^1; 0, \infty, \mathbf{i}; \zeta, 1/\zeta, \frac{\mathbf{i}(\zeta - \mathbf{i})}{\zeta + \mathbf{i}} \right) \quad (6.9)$$

then for each  $w_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{W}, v \in \mathbb{V}$ ,

$$\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}(w_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes v) = \langle Y(2^{L_0} e^{-\mathbf{i}L_1} v, \mathbf{i}) w_1 | w_2 \rangle \quad (6.10)$$

(b) If we choose positive trinions  $\mathfrak{P} = (6.8)$  and  $\mathfrak{Q} = (\mathbb{P}^1; x_1, x_2, x_3; \mu_1, \mu_2, \mu_3)$ , then

$$\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{Q}} = \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}} \circ (\mathcal{U}_0(\eta_1 \circ \mu_1^{-1}) \otimes \mathcal{U}_0(\eta_2 \circ \mu_2^{-1}) \otimes \mathcal{U}_0(\eta_3 \circ \mu_3^{-1})) \quad (6.11)$$

where we have

$$(\eta_1 \circ \mu_1^{-1})'(0) = \overline{(\eta_2 \circ \mu_2^{-1})'(0)} \quad (6.12)$$

and the arguments are chosen such that

$$\arg(\eta_1 \circ \mu_1^{-1})'(0) = -\arg(\eta_2 \circ \mu_2^{-1})'(0) \quad (6.13)$$

We call  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}$  the **basic conformal block associated to  $\mathbb{W}$  and the positive trinion  $\mathfrak{P}$** .

*Proof.* By Rem. 2.9, the linear functional

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{W} \otimes \mathbb{W}' \otimes \mathbb{V} &\mapsto \mathbb{C} \\ w_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes v &\mapsto \langle Y(v, \mathbf{i}) w_1 | w_2 \rangle = \langle Y(v, \mathbf{i}) w_1, \mathbb{C}w_2 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

is a conformal block associated to  $(\mathbb{P}^1; 0, \infty, \mathbf{i}; \zeta, 1/\zeta, \zeta - \mathbf{i})$ . By Prop. 2.20, Exp. 1.11, and the fact that  $z - \mathbf{i} = \alpha \left( \frac{\mathbf{i}(z - \mathbf{i})}{z + \mathbf{i}} \right)$  where  $\alpha(z) = \frac{2z}{1 + \mathbf{i}z}$ , we see that the linear functional  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}$  defined by (6.10) is a conformal block associated to  $\mathfrak{P}_\circ$  and  $\mathbb{W}, \mathbb{W}', \mathbb{V}$ .

To show that  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}$  is self-conjugate, we need to show that

$$\overline{\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes \Theta v)} = \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}(w_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes v) \quad (6.14)$$

for all  $w_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{W}$  and  $v \in \mathbb{V}$ . If we define a linear functional  $\omega' : \mathbb{W} \otimes \mathbb{W}' \otimes \mathbb{V} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  using the LHS of (6.14), then  $\omega'$  is a conformal block associated to  $\mathfrak{P}_\circ$  by Def. 4.11. Thus, in order to prove (6.14) (namely, to prove  $\omega' = \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}$ ), by Prop. 2.19, it suffices to check

$$\overline{\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes \mathbf{1})} = \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}(w_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes \mathbf{1})$$

for all  $w_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{W}$ , where  $\mathbf{1} \in \mathbb{V}$  is the vacuum vector. To prove this relation, we use (6.10) to compute that

$$\overline{\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes \mathbf{1})} = \overline{\langle w_2 | w_1 \rangle} = \langle w_1 | w_2 \rangle = \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}(w_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes \mathbf{1})$$

We are done with the proof of part (a).

We now proceed to prove part (b). First, note that (6.12) can be proved in the same way as (5.10). Now, to define  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{Q}}$  for an arbitrary positive trinion  $\mathfrak{Q} = (\mathbb{P}^1; x_\bullet; \mu_\bullet)$ , we find

a (unique) Möbius map sending  $0, \infty, \mathbf{i}$  to  $x_1, x_2, x_3$  respectively, and use this map to find local coordinates  $\eta_1, \eta_2, \eta_3$  such that  $\mathfrak{P}_\circ = (6.9)$  is equivalent to  $\mathfrak{P}$ . Then we define  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \Omega}$  using (6.11) in which  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}$  is replaced by  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}$ . Note that this definition is independent of the choice of arguments provided that (6.13) is satisfied!

To prove that  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \Omega}$  is self-conjugate, it suffices to show as above that

$$\overline{\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \Omega}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes \mathbf{1})} = \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \Omega}(w_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes \mathbf{1}).$$

Let  $\alpha = \eta_1 \circ \mu_1^{-1}$  and  $\alpha^* = \eta_1^* \circ (\mu_1^*)^{-1}$ . (Namely,  $\alpha^*(z) = \overline{\alpha(\bar{z})}$ .) Then since  $\eta_2 = \eta_1^*, \mu_2 = \mu_1^*$ , and since (6.13) holds, we have  $\mathcal{U}_0(\alpha) = \mathcal{U}_0(\alpha^*)\mathbb{C}$  as in (5.11). Thus, by (6.14),

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \Omega}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes \mathbf{1})} &= \overline{\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}(\mathcal{U}_0(\alpha)w_2 \otimes \mathcal{U}_0(\alpha^*)\mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes \mathbf{1})} \\ &= \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}(\mathcal{U}_0(\alpha)w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\mathcal{U}_0(\alpha)w_1 \otimes \mathbf{1}) = \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}(\mathcal{U}_0(\alpha)w_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}\mathcal{U}_0(\alpha)w_2 \otimes \mathbf{1}) \\ &= \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_\circ}(\mathcal{U}_0(\alpha)w_1 \otimes \mathcal{U}_0(\alpha^*)\mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes \mathbf{1}) = \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \Omega}(w_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes \mathbf{1}). \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have defined a self-conjugate conformal block  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \Omega}$  for each positive trinion  $\Omega$ .

Finally, for each positive trinions  $\mathfrak{P}, \Omega$  as in part (b), relation (6.11) follows from (6.13) and Cor. 1.14. This finishes the proof of part (b).  $\square$

## 6.4 Conformal blocks positively proportional to basic ones

In this subsection, we let  $\mathbb{W}$  be a unitary *simple*  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. Let

$$\mathfrak{P} = (\mathbb{P}^1; x_1, x_2, x_3; \eta_1, \eta_2, \eta_3)$$

be a positive trinion. By Exp. 2.11, we have

$$\dim \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{P}}^*(\mathbb{W} \otimes \mathbb{W}' \otimes \mathbb{V}) = 1$$

Therefore, every  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{P}}^*(\mathbb{W} \otimes \mathbb{W}' \otimes \mathbb{V})$  is proportional to the standard conformal block  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}$ .

**Definition 6.11.** We say that  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{P}}^*(\mathbb{W} \otimes \mathbb{W}' \otimes \mathbb{V})$  is **positively proportional** (resp. **strictly positively proportional**) to  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}$  if there exists  $\lambda \geq 0$  (resp.  $\lambda > 0$ ) such that  $\phi = \lambda \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}$ .

**Proposition 6.12.** Let  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{P}}^*(\mathbb{W} \otimes \mathbb{W}' \otimes \mathbb{V})$ , and choose a non-zero vector  $w \in \mathbb{W}$ . Then the following are equivalent.

- (1)  $\phi$  is positively proportional (resp. strictly positively proportional) to  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}$ .
- (2)  $\phi(w \otimes \mathbb{C}w \otimes \mathbf{1}) \geq 0$  (resp.  $> 0$ ).

*Proof.* We write  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}$  as  $\omega$  for simplicity. Choose  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  such that  $\phi = \lambda \omega$ . To prove the equivalence of (1) and (2), it suffices to show that  $\omega(w \otimes \mathbb{C}w \otimes \mathbf{1}) > 0$ . By performing a biholomorphism, we may assume

$$\mathfrak{P} = (\mathbb{P}^1; 0, \infty, \mathbf{i}; \eta, \eta^*, \xi)$$

where  $\eta^*(z) = \overline{\eta(1/\bar{z})}$ . Let  $\alpha \in \mathbb{G}$  be the inverse map of  $\eta$ , which is also a local coordinate at 0. Then by Thm. 6.10 (especially by (6.10) and (6.11)),

$$\begin{aligned} \omega(w \otimes \mathbb{C}w \otimes \mathbf{1}) &= \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_0}(\mathcal{U}_0(\alpha)w \otimes \mathcal{U}_0(\alpha^*)\mathbb{C}w \otimes \mathbf{1}) \\ &\stackrel{(5.11)}{=} \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}_0}(\mathcal{U}_0(\alpha)w \otimes \mathbb{C}\mathcal{U}_0(\alpha)w \otimes \mathbf{1}) = \langle \mathcal{U}_0(\alpha)w | \mathcal{U}_0(\alpha)w \rangle \end{aligned}$$

which is  $> 0$  because  $w \neq 0$  and  $\mathcal{U}_0(\alpha)$  is invertible.  $\square$

**Corollary 6.13.** *Choose a neighborhood  $U$  of  $x_1$  on which  $\eta_1$  is defined and univalent. Let  $U^* = \{x^* : x \in U\}$ , which is a neighborhood of  $x_2 = x_1^*$  on which  $\eta_2 = \eta_1^*$  is defined and univalent. Assume that  $U \cap U^* = \emptyset$ . Choose  $r > 0$  such that*

$$\eta_1^{-1}(U) \supset \mathbb{D}_r$$

and hence  $\eta_2^{-1}(U^*) \supset \mathbb{D}_r$ . Choose  $\tau \in \mathbb{D}_r$ . Define a linear map  $\phi : \mathbb{W} \otimes \mathbb{W}' \otimes \mathbb{V} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  by

$$\phi(w_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes v) = \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}(e^{\tau L_{-1}}w_1 \otimes e^{\bar{\tau} L_{-1}}\mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes v)$$

which (by Cor. 3.7) converges absolutely to an element of  $\mathcal{T}_{\Omega}^*(\mathbb{W} \otimes \mathbb{W}' \otimes \mathbb{V})$  where

$$\Omega = (\mathbb{P}^1; \eta_1^{-1}(\tau), \eta_2^{-1}(\bar{\tau}), x_3; \eta_1 - \tau, \eta_2 - \bar{\tau}, \eta_3)$$

is clearly a positive trinion. Then  $\phi$  is strictly positively proportional to  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \Omega}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $R_n = \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{(\tau L_{-1})^k}{k!}$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(w \otimes \mathbb{C}w \otimes \mathbf{1}) &= \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}(e^{\tau L_{-1}}w \otimes \mathbb{C}e^{\tau L_{-1}}w \otimes \mathbf{1}) \\ &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}(R_n w \otimes \mathbb{C}R_n w \otimes \mathbf{1}) \end{aligned}$$

which is  $\geq 0$  because  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}(R_n w \otimes \mathbb{C}R_n w \otimes \mathbf{1}) \geq 0$  by Prop. 6.12. So  $\phi = \lambda \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}$  for some  $\lambda \geq 0$  by Prop. 6.12.

Let us show that  $\lambda > 0$ . Suppose  $\lambda = 0$ . Then  $\phi = 0$ . We write the original  $\tau$  as  $\tau_0$  and let  $\tau$  denote a complex variable. Consider the holomorphic function

$$f(\tau, z) = \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}(e^{\tau L_{-1}}w_1 \otimes e^{z L_{-1}}\mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes v)$$

on  $\mathbb{D}_r \times \mathbb{D}_r$ . Then for each  $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_{\tau}^m \partial_z^n f(\tau, z)|_{\tau_0, \bar{\tau}_0} &= \omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}(e^{\tau_0 L_{-1}}L_{-1}^m w_1 \otimes e^{\bar{\tau}_0 L_{-1}}L_{-1}^n \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes v) \\ &= \phi(L_{-1}^m w_1 \otimes L_{-1}^n \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes v) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

So  $f = 0$ . Then  $f(0, 0) = 0$  implies  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}} = 0$ , impossible.  $\square$

## 7 Geometric positivity of fusion products

In this section, we let  $\mathbb{V}$  be a unitary  $C_2$ -cofinite VOA. We shall only consider semisimple unitary modules of  $\mathbb{V}$ . Let  $\zeta$  be the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ .

## 7.1 Geometric positivity of fusion

Choose positive trinions

$$\mathfrak{P} = (\mathbb{P}^1; x_1, x_2, x_3; \eta_1, \eta_2, \eta_3) \quad \mathfrak{Q} = (\mathbb{P}^1; y_1, y_2, y_3; \mu_1, \mu_2, \mu_3)$$

Recall that  $\eta_3, \mu_3$  are Möbius. By Prop. 6.8 (or by  $\eta_3^* = \eta_3, \mu_3^* = \mu_3$ ),

$$\eta_3(x_1) = \overline{\eta_3(x_2)} \quad \mu_3(y_1) = \overline{\mu_3(y_2)}.$$

We want to sew  $\mathfrak{P} \sqcup \mathfrak{Q}$  along  $x_3, y_3$ . So we need to choose  $\delta, \rho > 0$  such that Asmp. 3.1 and (3.2) are satisfied. (We write the  $r$  in (3.2) as  $\delta$  here.) Therefore, we let  $\delta, \rho \in (0, +\infty)$  be

$$\delta = |\eta_3(x_1)| \quad \rho = |\mu_3(y_1)|$$

Then for each  $0 < q < \delta\rho$ , we can define the sewing

$$\mathfrak{P} \#_q \mathfrak{Q} = \mathcal{S}_q(\mathfrak{P} \sqcup \mathfrak{Q})$$

along  $x_3, y_3$  with parameter  $q$ . Corresponding to this sewing, if  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{P}}^*(\mathbb{W}'_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{V})$  and  $\psi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{Q}}^*(\mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2 \otimes \mathbb{V})$  where  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  are unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules, we can define sewing

$$\phi \#_q \psi = \mathcal{S}_q(\phi \otimes \psi)$$

which, by Cor. 3.7, converges absolutely (as a power series of  $q$ ) to an element

$$\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{P} \#_q \mathfrak{Q}}^*(\mathbb{W}'_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2)$$

Now that this sewing is independent of the choice of  $\arg q$  since  $L_0$  has integral spectrum on  $\mathbb{V}$ .

**Definition 7.1.** Choose unitary semisimple  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$ . Associate  $\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{V}$  to the marked points  $x_1, x_2, x_3$  and  $\mathbb{W}_2, \mathbb{W}'_2, \mathbb{V}$  to  $y_1, y_2, y_3$  respectively. Choose  $0 < q < \delta\rho$  with  $\arg q = 0$ . We say that  $\mathbb{W}_1$  and  $\mathbb{W}_2$  have **geometrically positive fusion (product)** (or that  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is **geometrically positive**) if the conformal block

$$\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P} \#_q \mathfrak{Q}} \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \mathfrak{Q}} : \mathbb{W}'_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2 \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$$

associated to  $\mathfrak{P} \#_q \mathfrak{Q}$  is **reflection positive** in the sense that for each  $n \in \mathbb{Z}_+$  and each  $w_1, \dots, w_n \in \mathbb{W}_1, \tilde{w}_1, \dots, \tilde{w}_n \in \mathbb{W}_2$ , we have

$$\sum_{k,l=1}^n \omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P} \#_q \mathfrak{Q}} \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \mathfrak{Q}}(\mathbb{C} w_l \otimes w_k \otimes \tilde{w}_k \otimes \mathbb{C} \tilde{w}_l) \geq 0 \quad (7.1)$$

**Lemma 7.2.** *The notion of geometric positivity of the fusion product of  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  is independent of the choice of the positive trinions  $\mathfrak{P}, \mathfrak{Q}$  and the sewing parameter  $q$ .*

We will explain this lemma in the next subsection. We will also show that  $\mathfrak{P} \#_q \mathfrak{Q}$  equals  $\mathfrak{R} \#_{q'} \mathfrak{R}^*$  for some trinion  $\mathfrak{R}$  and some  $q' > 0$ , and that the reflection positivity defined above agrees with that defined in Def. 5.1. Let us first make some simplifications.

**Remark 7.3.** Given  $0 < q < \delta\rho$ , we can find some  $q_1, q_2$  with  $\arg q_1 = \arg q_2 = 0$  such that

$$q = q_1 q_2 \quad 0 < q_1 < \delta \quad 0 < q_2 < \rho$$

(e.g.  $q_1 = \sqrt{q\delta/\rho}$  and  $q_2 = \sqrt{q\rho/\delta}$ ). Let  $\tilde{\eta}_3 = \eta_3/q_1$  and  $\tilde{\mu}_3 = \mu_3/q_2$ . Then

$$\tilde{\mathfrak{P}} = (\mathbb{P}^1; x_1, x_2, x_3; \eta_1, \eta_2, \tilde{\eta}_3) \quad \tilde{\Omega} = (\mathbb{P}^1; y_1, y_2, y_3; \mu_1, \mu_2, \tilde{\mu}_3)$$

are positive trinions, and we clearly have

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\mathfrak{P}} \#_1 \tilde{\Omega} &= \mathfrak{P} \#_q \Omega \\ \omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \tilde{\mathfrak{P}}} &= \omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}} \circ (\mathbf{1} \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes q_1^{L_0}) \quad \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \tilde{\Omega}} = \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega} \circ (\mathbf{1} \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes q_2^{L_0}) \\ \omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \tilde{\mathfrak{P}}} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \tilde{\Omega}} &= \omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}} \#_q \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega} \end{aligned}$$

Thus, in the study of geometric positivity of fusion,

we may assume that  $q = 1$  and  $\arg q = 0$  (and hence  $\delta\rho > 1$ ).

**Remark 7.4.** Choose orthogonal irreducible decompositions

$$\mathbb{W}_1 = \bigoplus_i \mathbb{W}_{1,i} \quad \mathbb{W}_2 = \bigoplus_\alpha \mathbb{W}_{2,\alpha} \quad (7.2)$$

By the description of basic conformal blocks in Thm. 6.10 (especially, by (6.10) and (6.11)), the restriction of  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}}$  to  $\mathbb{W}'_{1,i} \otimes \mathbb{W}_{1,j} \otimes \mathbb{V}$  is zero if  $i \neq j$ , and similarly, the restriction of  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}$  to  $\mathbb{W}_{2,\alpha} \otimes \mathbb{W}'_{2,\beta} \otimes \mathbb{V}$  is zero  $\alpha \neq \beta$ . It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}} \#_q \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega} &\text{ is reflection positive} \\ \Updownarrow \\ \omega_{\mathbb{W}'_{1,i}, \mathfrak{P}} \#_q \omega_{\mathbb{W}_{2,\alpha}, \Omega} &\text{ is reflection positive for each } i, \alpha \end{aligned}$$

Thus, in the study of geometric positivity of fusion, we may assume that the unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  are irreducible.

## 7.2 The canonical equivalence $\mathfrak{P} \#_1 \Omega \simeq \mathfrak{R} \#_1 \mathfrak{R}^*$

Let  $\mathfrak{P}, \Omega$  be as in the previous subsection. By Prop. 6.8 and 6.9, we can assume that

$$\mathfrak{P} = (\mathbb{P}^1; \overline{\theta_1}, \theta_1, \infty; \eta, \eta^*, 1/\zeta) \quad (7.3a)$$

$$\Omega = (\mathbb{P}^1; z_2, 1/\overline{z_2}, \mathbf{i}; \mu, \mu^*, \varpi) \quad (7.3b)$$

where  $\zeta$  is the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ ,  $\theta_1, z_2 \in \mathbb{C}$  satisfy

$$\operatorname{Im}(\theta_1) < 0, \quad |z_2| < 1, \quad (7.4)$$

and also

$$\begin{aligned} \eta^*(z) &= \overline{\eta(\overline{z})} \quad \mu^*(z) = \overline{\mu(1/\overline{z})} \\ \varpi &= \frac{\mathbf{i}(\zeta - \mathbf{i})}{\zeta + \mathbf{i}} \end{aligned}$$

We assume the condition  $\delta\rho > 1$  in Rem. 7.3, which in the present setting reads

$$|\theta_1| < |\varpi(z_2)|. \quad (7.5)$$



**Remark 7.5.** One easily calculates that the inverse of  $\varpi$  equals the reciprocal of  $\varpi$ :

$$\varpi^{-1} = 1/\varpi = \frac{\zeta + \mathbf{i}}{\mathbf{i}(\zeta - \mathbf{i})}$$

We set

$$z_1 = \varpi^{-1}(\theta_1) = 1/\varpi(\theta_1).$$

Then (7.4) is equivalent to

$$|z_1| < 1, \quad |z_2| < 1.$$

We will use the symbol  $z_1$  frequently in the following discussions.

We make some crucial geometric observations:

**Observation 7.6.** Take sewing  $\mathfrak{P} \#_1 \Omega$  along  $\infty$  and  $\mathbf{i}$ . Namely (cf. Def. 3.2), we remove  $\infty \in \mathfrak{P}_1$  and  $\mathbf{i} \in \Omega$ , and glue the remaining part using the relation that

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma_1 \in \mathfrak{P} \setminus \{\infty\} &\sim \gamma_2 \in \Omega \setminus \{\mathbf{i}\} \\ \updownarrow \\ \gamma_1 &= \varpi(\gamma_2) \end{aligned}$$

Then we have an equivalence

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{P} \#_1 \Omega &= (\mathbb{P}^1 \#_1 \mathbb{P}^1; \overline{\theta_1}, \theta_1, z_2, 1/\overline{z_2}; \eta, \eta^*, \mu, \mu^*) \\ &\quad \updownarrow \simeq \\ \mathfrak{S} &:= (\mathbb{P}^1; 1/\overline{z_1}, z_1, z_2, 1/\overline{z_2}; \eta \circ \varpi, \eta^* \circ \varpi, \mu, \mu^*) \end{aligned} \tag{7.6}$$

by making the identifications

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma_1 \in \mathfrak{P} \setminus \{\infty\} &\simeq \varpi^{-1}(\gamma_1) \in \mathfrak{S} \\ \gamma_2 \in \Omega \setminus \{\mathbf{i}\} &\simeq \gamma_2 \in \mathfrak{S} \end{aligned}$$

Notice that

$$\eta^* \circ \varpi(z) = \overline{\eta \circ \varpi(1/\overline{z})}$$

since, by Exp. 6.6, the pullback of the involution  $z \mapsto \overline{z}$  along  $\varpi$  is  $z \mapsto 1/\overline{z}$ .

**Remark 7.7.** The  $\mathfrak{S}$  in Obs. 7.6 is a self-conjugate 4-pointed sphere with local coordinates, if we define the involution  $\mathfrak{S}$  to be

$$*: z \in \mathfrak{S} \mapsto 1/\overline{z}$$

This involution agrees with that of  $\mathfrak{P}$  and  $\Omega$ . In general, if we sew a pair of self-conjugate pointed compact Riemann surfaces with local coordinates, we also get a self-conjugate one.

**Observation 7.8.** We continue the discussion in Obs. 7.6. Let

$$\mathfrak{R} = (\mathbb{P}^1; z_1, z_2, \infty; \eta^* \circ \varpi, \mu, 1/\zeta) \quad (7.7)$$

Then we can make an explicit realization of  $\mathfrak{R}^*$ :

$$\mathfrak{R}^* = (\mathbb{P}^1; 1/\overline{z_1}, 1/\overline{z_2}, 0; \eta \circ \varpi, \mu^*, \zeta)$$

The sewing  $\mathfrak{R} \#_1 \mathfrak{R}^*$  is given by

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \gamma_1 \in \mathfrak{R} \setminus \{\infty\} & \sim & \gamma_2 \in \mathfrak{R}^* \setminus \{0\} \\ \updownarrow & & \\ \gamma_1 = \gamma_2 & & \end{array}$$

Then we have a canonical identification

$$\mathfrak{R} \#_1 \mathfrak{R}^* \simeq (\mathbb{P}^1; z_1, z_2, 1/\overline{z_1}, 1/\overline{z_2}; \eta^* \circ \varpi, \mu, \eta \circ \varpi, \mu^*)$$

We change the order of marked points by moving the third one  $1/\overline{z_1}$  to the third position. Then we obtain a canonical equivalence  $\mathfrak{R} \#_1 \mathfrak{R}^* \simeq \mathfrak{S}$ , which is also equivalent to  $\mathfrak{P} \#_1 \Omega$  through (7.6).

We summarize the above observations by the formula

$$\mathfrak{P} \#_1 \Omega \simeq \mathfrak{R} \#_1 \mathfrak{R}^* \quad (7.8)$$

We emphasize that in the above equivalence, we have changed the order of marked points. (In the case of positive trinions, the order cannot be altered. But in the current situation, the order is immaterial.)

**Remark 7.9.** Using Def. 5.1, we can define reflection positivity for elements of  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R} \#_1 \mathfrak{R}^*}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2)$ . This can be translated to the reflection positivity of elements of  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{P} \#_1 \Omega}^*(\mathbb{W}'_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2)$  thanks to the equivalence (7.8). It is clear that this notion of reflection positivity agrees with the one in Def. 7.1.

**Proof of Lem. 7.2.** By Rem. 7.3 and 7.4, we may assume that  $q = 1, \arg q = 0$  and that  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  are irreducible. Choose  $\mathfrak{P} = (7.3a)$  and  $\Omega = (7.3b)$  and assume that  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}}$  is reflection positive. By Thm. 6.10-(b) and Prop. 5.4, if we change the local coordinates  $\eta, \mu$  of  $\mathfrak{P}, \Omega$ , the reflection positivity is preserved.

Thus, we may assume that  $\eta = \zeta - \overline{\theta_1}$  and  $\mu = \zeta - z_2$  in (7.3). By Cor. 6.13 and Prop. 5.5, the reflection positivity of  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}}$  is preserved if we choose  $\tau_1, \tau_2 \in \mathbb{D}_\varepsilon$  (for some small  $\varepsilon > 0$ ) and replace  $\theta_1$  by  $\theta_1 + \tau_1$  and replace  $z_2$  by  $z_2 + \tau_2$ . Namely, the reflection positivity is preserved by local translation. Thus, to prove that the reflection positivity is irrelevant to the choice of  $\theta_1$  and  $z_2$ , it suffices to show that the set of  $(\theta_1, z_2)$  satisfying (7.4) and (7.5) is connected, namely, that

$$O = \{(\theta_1, z_2) \in \mathbb{C}^2 : \text{Im}(\theta_1) < 0, |z_2| < 1, |\theta_1| < |\varpi(z_2)|\}$$

is connected. But this follows from the fact that  $1 \times \varpi$  sends  $O$  biholomorphically to

$$O' = \{(\theta_1, \theta_2) \in \mathbb{C}^2 : \text{Im}(\theta_1) < 0, \text{Im}(\theta_2) < 0, |\theta_1| < |\theta_2|\}$$

which is clearly connected. □

### 7.3 The canonical inner product on $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\mathfrak{R}} \mathbb{W}_2$

We assume that  $\mathbb{V}$  is unitary,  $C_2$ -cofinite, and rational. We assume that all irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules are unitary. Let  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  be unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules, which are automatically semisimple since  $\mathbb{V}$  is rational.

In this subsection, we use the Sewing-factorization Thm. 3.8 to define a canonical inner product on the  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  when this fusion is geometrically positive. We will see in the next section that when  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  are irreducible, this inner product equals, up to a positive scalar multiplication, the inner product defined in [Gui19b]. If the fusion of all unitary irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules are geometrically positive, we will call  $\mathbb{V}$  a **completely unitary** VOA. In this case, the inner products on all  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  defined in this way make the braided tensor category of  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules unitary ([Gui19b, Thm. 7.8]). Due to this fact, one is expected to show that the connections on the bundles of conformal blocks (as defined in [FB04, Chapter 17]) is projectively unitary, and that the sewing map  $\mathfrak{S}_q$  in Thm. 3.8 is also unitary, as pointed out in [Kir98, Thm. 10.10]. This subsection is not necessarily needed in later proofs, and can be skipped on first reading.

For each equivalence class of irreducible unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules we choose a representative  $\mathbb{M}$ , and let all these representatives form a (necessarily finite) set  $\mathcal{E}$ . If for each  $\mathbb{M} \in \mathcal{E}$  we choose a basis  $(\phi_{\mathbb{M}, \alpha})_{\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_{\mathbb{M}}}$  of the vector space  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$  (which is finite-dimensional by Thm. 2.18), then by Thm. 3.8,

$$\{\phi_{\mathbb{M}, \alpha} \#_1 \phi_{\mathbb{M}, \beta}^* : \mathbb{M} \in \mathcal{E}, \alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{A}_{\mathbb{M}}\} \quad (7.9)$$

form a basis of  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R} \#_1 \mathfrak{R}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}_1' \otimes \mathbb{W}_2')$ .

We define the tensor product module

$$\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\mathfrak{R}} \mathbb{W}_2 = \bigoplus_{\mathbb{M} \in \mathcal{E}} \mathbb{M} \otimes \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R}}(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}') \quad (7.10)$$

where

$$\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R}}(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}') \text{ is the dual space of } \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$$

So we have

$$(\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\mathfrak{R}} \mathbb{W}_2)' = \bigoplus_{\mathbb{M} \in \mathcal{E}} \mathbb{M}' \otimes \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$$

Define the canonical conformal block  $\Psi : \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes (\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\mathfrak{R}} \mathbb{W}_2)' \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  associated to  $\mathfrak{R}$  by

$$\Psi(w_1 \otimes w_2 \otimes (m' \otimes \phi)) = \phi(w_1 \otimes w_2 \otimes m') \quad (7.11)$$

where  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{W}_2, m' \in \mathbb{M}'$ , and  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$ .

Choose an inner product for  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$  for each  $\mathbb{M} \in \mathcal{E}$ , which gives a corresponding inner product of  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$ . Then  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\mathfrak{R}} \mathbb{W}_2$  is equipped with an inner product under which it is a unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. By the fact that (7.9) form a basis, each element of  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R} \#_1 \mathfrak{R}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}_1' \otimes \mathbb{W}_2')$  can be written as  $A\Psi\#_1\Psi^*$  for a unique  $A \in \text{End}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\mathfrak{R}} \mathbb{W}_2)$ . (Recall (5.15) for the notation.)

We choose  $A$  to be the unique one such that

$$\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega} = A \Psi \#_1 \Psi^*. \quad (7.12)$$

More precisely, if we let  $\{\phi_{\mathbb{M}, \alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_{\mathbb{M}}}$  be an orthonormal basis of  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$ , write

$$A = \bigoplus_{\mathbb{M} \in \mathcal{E}} \mathbf{1}_{\mathbb{M}} \otimes A_{\mathbb{M}}$$

according to the decomposition (7.10) where  $A_{\mathbb{M}} \in \text{End}_{\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R}}}(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$ , and let  $(A_{\mathbb{M}, \alpha, \beta})$  be the matrix representation of  $A_{\mathbb{M}}$  with respect to the dual orthonormal basis of  $\{\phi_{\mathbb{M}, \alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_{\mathbb{M}'}}$  then

$$\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega} = \sum_{\mathbb{M} \in \mathcal{E}} \sum_{\alpha, \beta} A_{\mathbb{M}, \alpha, \beta} \phi_{\mathbb{M}, \beta} \#_1 \phi_{\mathbb{M}, \alpha}^*. \quad (7.13)$$

Since  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}}$  and  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}$  are self-conjugate conformal blocks (Thm. 6.10), it is not hard to see that  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}$  is self conjugate. Thus  $A = A^*$  by Lem. 5.11.

**Remark 7.10.** Choose some new positive trinions  $\tilde{\mathfrak{P}}, \tilde{\Omega}$  as in Subsec. 7.2, and choose  $\tilde{\mathfrak{R}}$  accordingly so that we have a canonical equivalence  $\tilde{\mathfrak{P}} \#_1 \tilde{\Omega} \simeq \tilde{\mathfrak{R}} \#_1 \tilde{\mathfrak{R}}^*$ . Then one can obtain  $\tilde{\mathfrak{R}}$  from  $\mathfrak{R}$  making some changes of coordinates and moving the marked points. We fix such process of constructing  $\tilde{\mathfrak{R}}$  from  $\mathfrak{R}$ . Then using formulas (2.20) and (3.5), we can construct  $\tilde{\phi} \in \mathcal{T}_{\tilde{\mathfrak{R}}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$  from each  $\phi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$ . We thus obtain a linear isomorphism

$$\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}') \rightarrow \mathcal{T}_{\tilde{\mathfrak{R}}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}'), \quad \phi \mapsto \tilde{\phi}$$

Thus, we can define an inner product on  $\mathcal{T}_{\tilde{\mathfrak{R}}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$  such that the above map is unitary. (Note that the above map is not unique since it depends on the process we choose to obtain  $\tilde{\mathfrak{R}}$  from  $\mathfrak{R}$ .) This inner product is described by the fact that if  $\{\phi_{\mathbb{M}, \alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_{\mathbb{M}'}}$  is an orthonormal basis of  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$  then  $\{\tilde{\phi}_{\mathbb{M}, \alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_{\mathbb{M}'}}$  is an orthonormal basis of  $\mathcal{T}_{\tilde{\mathfrak{R}}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$ . Thus, we obtain a unitary equivalence of modules

$$U : \mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\mathfrak{R}} \mathbb{W}_2 \rightarrow \mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\tilde{\mathfrak{R}}} \mathbb{W}_2$$

Let  $\tilde{\Psi} : \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes (\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\tilde{\mathfrak{R}}} \mathbb{W}_2)' \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be the canonical conformal block associated to  $\tilde{\mathfrak{R}}$  defined in a similar way as (7.11). Choose a self-adjoint  $\tilde{A} \in \text{End}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\tilde{\mathfrak{R}}} \mathbb{W}_2)$  such that

$$\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \tilde{\mathfrak{P}}} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \tilde{\Omega}} = \tilde{A} \tilde{\Psi} \#_1 \tilde{\Psi}^* \quad (7.14)$$

By Thm. 6.10-(b) and Cor. 6.13, and by using the orthonormal bases  $\{\phi_{\mathbb{M}, \alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_{\mathbb{M}'}}$  and  $\{\tilde{\phi}_{\mathbb{M}, \alpha}\}_{\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_{\mathbb{M}'}}$  mentioned above, we see that if  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  are irreducible, then

$$\tilde{A} = \lambda \cdot U A U^{-1}$$

for some  $\lambda > 0$ . Thus, even if  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  are not assumed irreducible, or if we choose a completely different inner product for  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{H}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$  and define  $\tilde{\Psi}$  and  $\tilde{A}$  accordingly, the signature of each Hermitian matrix  $\tilde{A}_{\mathbb{M}}$  in the decomposition

$$\tilde{A} = \bigoplus_{\mathbb{M} \in \mathcal{E}} \mathbf{1}_{\mathbb{M}} \otimes \tilde{A}_{\mathbb{M}}$$

agrees with that of  $A_{\mathbb{M}}$ . In particular,  $A$  is invertible iff  $\tilde{A}$  is so, and  $A$  is positive iff  $\tilde{A}$  is so.  $\square$

According to the above long remark, if  $A$  is invertible and positive for one choice of  $\mathfrak{P}, \Omega$ , it is so for any other  $\mathfrak{P}, \Omega$ . We will see in the next section that  $A$  is automatically invertible for some choice of  $\mathfrak{P}, \Omega$ . (This is a consequence of Huang's rigidity theorem ([Hua08]) for the tensor category of  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules.)

By Thm. 5.10 and 5.12, we know that  $A \geq 0$  iff  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is geometrically positive. Suppose  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is geometrically positive. Then we can choose a unique inner product on  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{H}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{M}')$  (for each  $\mathbb{M} \in \mathcal{E}$ ) such that  $A$  becomes the identity operator. In this way, we get the correct inner product on  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\mathfrak{H}} \mathbb{W}_2$ . Under this inner product, we have

$$\omega_{\mathbb{W}_1', \mathfrak{P}} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega} = \Psi \#_1 \Psi^*. \quad (7.15)$$

**Remark 7.11.** Recall the conformal block  $\Psi \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{H}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes (\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\mathfrak{H}} \mathbb{W}_2)')$ . As in Prop. 5.2, we consider the corresponding linear map into the algebraic completion:

$$T_{\Psi} : \mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2 \rightarrow \overline{\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\mathfrak{H}} \mathbb{W}_2}$$

By Prop. 5.8 and Thm. 5.12, the range of  $T_{\Psi}$  is norm-dense in the Hilbert space completion  $\mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\mathfrak{H}} \mathbb{W}_2}$ . Thus, by (7.15) and Prop. 5.2, for each  $n \in \mathbb{Z}_+$ ,  $w_1, \dots, w_n \in \mathbb{W}_1$ , and  $\tilde{w}_1, \dots, \tilde{w}_n \in \mathbb{W}_2$ , if we set

$$\mathbf{w} = \sum_{k=1}^n w_k \otimes \tilde{w}_k, \quad \mathbf{m} = \sum_{l=1}^n m_l \otimes \tilde{m}_l \quad \in \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2$$

we have

$$\langle T_{\Psi}(\mathbf{w}) | T_{\Psi}(\mathbf{m}) \rangle = \sum_{k,l=1}^n \omega_{\mathbb{W}_1', \mathfrak{P}} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega} (\mathbb{C} m_l \otimes w_k \otimes \tilde{w}_k \otimes \mathbb{C} \tilde{m}_l) \quad (7.16)$$

This formula uniquely determines the inner product on  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\mathfrak{H}} \mathbb{W}_2$ . It tells us, roughly speaking, how to put a (possibly degenerate) inner product on  $\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2$  so that its Hilbert space completion is  $\mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes_{\mathfrak{H}} \mathbb{W}_2}$ .

## 8 Equivalence to the algebraic positivity of fusion products

In this section, we assume that  $\mathbb{V}$  is CFT-type, unitary,  $C_2$ -cofinite, and rational. As in Subsec. 7.3, for each equivalence class of irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules we choose a representative  $\mathbb{M}$ , and let all these representatives form a (necessarily finite) set  $\mathcal{E}$ .

As usual, we let  $\zeta$  denote the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ .

## 8.1 Various intertwining operators

Recall the definition of intertwining operators in Exp. 2.22. Let  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2, \mathbb{W}_3$  be unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules. For each  $\mathcal{Y} \in \mathcal{I}(\frac{\mathbb{W}_3}{\mathbb{W}_1 \mathbb{W}_2})$ , note that for each  $z \in \mathbb{C}^\times$  with chosen  $\arg z$ ,  $\mathcal{Y}(\cdot, z)$  is a linear map  $\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \rightarrow \overline{\mathbb{W}_3}$ . Define the **conjugate intertwining operator** of  $\mathcal{Y}$  to be

$$\mathcal{Y}^* \in \mathcal{I}\left(\frac{\mathbb{W}'_3}{\mathbb{W}'_1 \mathbb{W}'_2}\right)$$

$$\mathcal{Y}^*(\mathbb{C}w_1, \bar{z})\mathbb{C}w_2 = \mathbb{C} \cdot \mathcal{Y}(w_1, z)w_2$$

where  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{W}_2$ , and we set

$$\arg \bar{z} = \arg z^{-1} = -\arg z \quad (8.1)$$

Thus, if  $w_3 \in \mathbb{W}_3$  then

$$\langle \mathcal{Y}^*(\mathbb{C}w_1, \bar{z})\mathbb{C}w_2 | \mathbb{C}w_3 \rangle = \langle w_3 | \mathcal{Y}(w_1, z)w_2 \rangle \quad (8.2)$$

Define the **contragredient intertwining operator** of  $\mathcal{Y}$  to be

$$\mathcal{Y}^c \in \mathcal{I}\left(\frac{\mathbb{W}'_3}{\mathbb{W}_1 \mathbb{W}'_2}\right)$$

$$\langle \mathcal{Y}(w_1, z)w_2, w'_3 \rangle = \langle w_2, \mathcal{Y}^c(\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_z)w_1, z^{-1})w'_3 \rangle \quad (8.3)$$

for each  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{W}_2, w_3 \in \mathbb{W}'_3$ , where

$$\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_z) = e^{zL_1}(-z^{-2})^{L_0} \quad (8.4)$$

in which we assume

$$\arg(-z^{-2}) = \pi - 2\arg z \quad (8.5)$$

The **adjoint intertwining operator** of  $\mathcal{Y}$ , denoted by  $\mathcal{Y}^\dagger \in \mathcal{I}(\frac{\mathbb{W}_2}{\mathbb{W}'_1 \mathbb{W}_3})$ , is defined to be

$$\mathcal{Y}^\dagger = \mathcal{Y}^{c*} \in \mathcal{I}\left(\frac{\mathbb{W}_2}{\mathbb{W}'_1 \mathbb{W}_3}\right)$$

We let  $\Gamma_{\mathbb{W}}$  be the unique element of  $\mathcal{I}(\frac{\mathbb{V}}{\mathbb{W}'_1 \mathbb{W}_1})$  (called the **annihilation operator** associated to  $\mathbb{W}$ ) satisfying (cf. [Gui19a, (1.40)])

$$\langle \Gamma_{\mathbb{W}_1}(w'_1, z)w_1, \mathbf{1} \rangle = \langle w_1, e^{z^{-1}L_1}\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_z)w'_1 \rangle. \quad (8.6)$$

for all  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, w'_1 \in \mathbb{W}'_1$ . (Note that the uniqueness is due to Prop. 2.19.)

Finally, notice that the vertex operation  $Y_{\mathbb{W}_2}$  of  $\mathbb{W}_2$  is an element of  $\mathcal{I}(\frac{\mathbb{W}_2}{\mathbb{V}\mathbb{W}_2})$ .

## 8.2 Algebraic positivity of fusion

We continue the discussion from the last subsection. Let  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  be unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules. Let

$$\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2 = \bigoplus_{\mathbb{M} \in \mathcal{E}} \mathbb{M} \otimes \mathcal{I} \left( \begin{smallmatrix} \mathbb{M} \\ \mathbb{W}_1 \mathbb{W}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right)^*$$

Assume that  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is unitarizable. This means that  $\mathbb{M}$  is unitarizable whenever  $\mathcal{I} \left( \begin{smallmatrix} \mathbb{M} \\ \mathbb{W}_1 \mathbb{W}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  is nonzero. Fix a unitary structure on each such  $\mathbb{M}$ . Fix an arbitrary inner product on  $\mathcal{I} \left( \begin{smallmatrix} \mathbb{M} \\ \mathbb{W}_1 \mathbb{W}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  and the corresponding one on  $\mathcal{I} \left( \begin{smallmatrix} \mathbb{M} \\ \mathbb{W}_1 \mathbb{W}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right)^*$ . Then  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is a unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. Define

$$\begin{aligned} \Pi &\in \mathcal{I} \left( \begin{smallmatrix} \mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2 \\ \mathbb{W}_1 \mathbb{W}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right) \\ \langle \Pi(w_1, z)w_2, m' \otimes \mathcal{Y} \rangle &= \langle \mathcal{Y}(w_1, z)w_2, m' \rangle \end{aligned}$$

if  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{W}_2, m' \in \mathbb{M}', \mathcal{Y} \in \mathcal{I} \left( \begin{smallmatrix} \mathbb{M} \\ \mathbb{W}_1 \mathbb{W}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right)$ , and  $m' \otimes \nu$  is regarded as an element of

$$(\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2)' = \bigoplus_{\mathbb{M}' \in \mathcal{E}} \mathbb{M}' \otimes \mathcal{I} \left( \begin{smallmatrix} \mathbb{M} \\ \mathbb{W}_1 \mathbb{W}_2 \end{smallmatrix} \right)$$

According to [Gui19b, Chapter 6], there is a unique invertible bounded linear map  $A \in \text{End}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2)$  such that for each  $z_1, z'_1 \in \mathbb{C}^\times$  satisfying

$$0 < |z'_1 - z_1| < |z_1| < |z'_1| \quad (8.7a)$$

$$\arg(z'_1 - z_1) = \arg z_1 = \arg z'_1 \quad (8.7b)$$

and for all  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, w'_1 \in \mathbb{W}'_1$  we have the fusion relation

$$Y_{\mathbb{W}_2}(\Gamma_{\mathbb{W}_1}(w'_1, z'_1 - z_1)w_1, z_1) = \Pi^\dagger(w'_1, z'_1)A\Pi(w_1, z_1) \quad (8.8)$$

More precisely, if for each unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}$  and each  $r \geq 0$  we let  $P_r$  be the projection of  $\mathbb{W}$  onto its  $L_0$ -weight  $r$  eigenspace  $\mathbb{W}_{(r)}$ , then for each  $w_2 \in \mathbb{W}_2, w'_2 \in \mathbb{W}'_2$ , we have

$$\sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \langle Y_{\mathbb{W}_2}(P_n \Gamma_{\mathbb{W}_1}(w'_1, z'_1 - z_1)w_1, z_1)w_2, w'_2 \rangle = \sum_{r \geq 0} \langle \Pi^\dagger(w'_1, z'_1)P_r A \Pi(w_1, z_1)w_2, w'_2 \rangle$$

where both sides converge absolutely. (Indeed, the absolute convergence is implied by Thm. 3.6.) We note that, as pointed out in [Gui19b], the invertibility of  $A$  is due to the rigidity of the tensor category of  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules proved in [Hua08].

**Definition 8.1.** We say that  $\mathbb{W}_1$  and  $\mathbb{W}_2$  have **algebraically positive fusion (product)** (or that  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is **algebraically positive**) if the operator  $A$  in (8.8) is positive, namely,  $\langle A\nu | \nu \rangle \geq 0$  for all  $\nu \in \mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  (and hence all  $\nu \in \mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2}$ ).

### 8.3 Main results

In the rest of this section, we assume the settings and use freely the notations in Subsec. 7.2.

We choose the  $z_1$  in (8.8) to be the same one in Subsec. 7.2, and choose  $z'_1 = 1/\overline{z_1}$ . But here we shall only consider the special case that

$$z_1 = s\mathbf{i}, \quad z'_1 = 1/\overline{z_1} = s^{-1}\mathbf{i} \quad (0 < s < 1)$$

Let  $-t\mathbf{i} = \theta_1 = \varpi(z_1) = \mathbf{i}(z_1 - \mathbf{i})/(z_1 + \mathbf{i})$ . So  $t > 0$  satisfies

$$t = \frac{1-s}{1+s} \quad s = \frac{1-t}{1+t}$$

**Remark 8.2.** Under the assumption  $s < 1$ , (8.7a) means  $0 < s^{-1} - s < s$ , namely

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} < s < 1 \quad \text{equivalently} \quad 0 < t < 3 - 2\sqrt{2} \quad (8.9)$$

Recall  $\varpi = \frac{\mathbf{i}(\zeta - \mathbf{i})}{\zeta + \mathbf{i}}$  and  $\varpi^{-1} = 1/\varpi$ . It is useful to note

$$\varpi \circ \varpi = \varpi^{-1} \circ \varpi^{-1} = 1/\zeta$$

where we recall that  $\zeta$  is the standard coordinate of  $\mathbb{C}$ . In (7.3), we choose  $z_2 = 0, \mu = \zeta$ . Then (7.5) is automatically satisfied since  $|t| < 1$ . We choose  $\eta$  to satisfy

$$\eta^* \circ \varpi = \zeta - s\mathbf{i}.$$

(Note that  $\eta^* \circ \varpi$  is the local coordinate of  $\mathfrak{S}$  at  $z_1 = s\mathbf{i}$  (cf. (7.6)). And  $\eta^*(z) = \overline{\eta(\overline{z})}$ .) Namely  $\eta^* = \varpi^{-1} - s\mathbf{i}$  and hence  $\eta = \varpi + s\mathbf{i}$ . To summarize, we assume that (7.3) is

$$\mathfrak{P} = (\mathbb{P}^1; t\mathbf{i}, -t\mathbf{i}, \infty; \varpi + s\mathbf{i}, \varpi^{-1} - s\mathbf{i}, 1/\zeta) \quad (8.10a)$$

$$\mathfrak{Q} = (\mathbb{P}^1; 0, \infty, \mathbf{i}; \zeta, 1/\zeta, \varpi) \quad (8.10b)$$

Then (7.6) says

$$\mathfrak{P}_{\#1}\mathfrak{Q} \simeq \mathfrak{S} = (\mathbb{P}^1; s^{-1}\mathbf{i}, s\mathbf{i}, 0, \infty; 1/\zeta + s\mathbf{i}, \zeta - s\mathbf{i}, \zeta, 1/\zeta) \quad (8.11)$$

And (7.7) becomes

$$\mathfrak{R} = (\mathbb{P}^1; s\mathbf{i}, 0, \infty; \zeta - s\mathbf{i}, \zeta, 1/\zeta) \quad (8.12)$$

Define

$$\begin{aligned} \Psi &\in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{R}}^*(\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes (\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2)') \\ \Psi(w_1 \otimes w_2 \otimes \nu') &= \langle \Pi(w_1, s\mathbf{i})w_2, \nu' \rangle \end{aligned} \quad (8.13)$$

where  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{W}_2, \nu' \in (\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2)'$ , and we choose

$$\arg(s\mathbf{i}) = \arg(s^{-1}\mathbf{i}) = \pi/2$$

The proof of the following theorem is deferred to Sec. 9



**Theorem 8.3.** Assume that  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  are unitary irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules and  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is a unitarizable  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. Choose a unitary structure on  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$ . Choose  $s$  satisfying (8.9), and choose positive trinions  $\mathfrak{P}, \Omega$  defined by (8.10). Let  $A$  be as in (8.8). Then, in view of the canonical equivalence  $\mathfrak{P} \#_1 \Omega \simeq \mathfrak{R} \#_1 \mathfrak{R}^*$  (cf. (7.8)), there exists  $\lambda > 0$  (possibly depending on  $s$ ) such that

$$\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega} = \lambda \cdot A \Psi \#_1 \Psi^* \quad (8.14)$$

More precisely, for each  $w_1, \tilde{w}_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1$  and  $w_2, \tilde{w}_2 \in \mathbb{W}_2$ ,

$$\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}(\mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2) = \lambda \cdot A \Psi \#_1 \Psi^*(w_1 \otimes w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2) \quad (8.15)$$

**Corollary 8.4.** Assume that  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  are unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules and  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is a unitarizable  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. Choose a unitary structure on  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$ . Then  $A = A^*$ . Moreover,  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is geometrically positive if and only if it is algebraically positive.

*Proof.* It suffices to assume that  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  are irreducible. Fix an inner product on  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  so that  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is a unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. Let  $A$  be as in (8.8). By Thm. 6.10,  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}}$  and  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}$  are self-conjugate. So (8.15) defines a self-conjugate conformal block. Therefore,  $A = A^*$  by Lem. 5.11 and Thm. 5.12. The equivalence of the two positivities follows immediately from Thm. 8.3, along with the help of Thm. 5.10 and 5.12.  $\square$

**Definition 8.5.** Assume that  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is a unitarizable  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. If the fusion product  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is either geometrically or algebraically positive, we say that  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is **positive**.

**Theorem 8.6.** Let  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$  be unitary irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules. Assume that  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is an irreducible unitarizable  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. Then the fusion  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is positive.

*Proof.* Fix an inner product on  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  so that  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is a unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module. Since  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is irreducible, the self-adjoint operator  $A$  (cf. Cor. 8.4) in (8.14) is a non-zero real number  $a$ . Assume that  $a < 0$ . Let us find a contradiction.

Step 1. By Thm. 8.3 and 5.10, for any  $s$  satisfying (8.9) and any  $\mathfrak{P}, \Omega$  defined as in (8.10),  $-\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}$  is reflection positive. Thus, if we define positive trinion

$$\mathfrak{X} = (\mathbb{P}^1; t\mathbf{i}, -t\mathbf{i}, \infty; \eta, \eta^*, 1/\zeta)$$

where  $\eta$  is a local coordinate at  $t\mathbf{i}$  and  $\eta^*(z) = \overline{\eta(\bar{z})}$ , then by Prop. 5.4 and Thm. 6.10-(b),  $b\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{X}} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}$  is reflection positive.

Step 2. Choose any  $0 < q < 1$  and  $\arg q = 0$ . Let us use Step 1 to show that  $-\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}} \#_q \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}$  is reflection positive. Notice that

$$\tilde{\mathfrak{P}} = (\mathbb{P}^1; t\mathbf{i}, -t\mathbf{i}, \infty; \varpi + s\mathbf{i}, \varpi^{-1} - s\mathbf{i}, 1/q\zeta)$$

is a positive trinion and is equivalent (via the map  $z \mapsto qz$ ) to

$$\tilde{\mathfrak{X}} = (\mathbb{P}^1; qt\mathbf{i}, -qt\mathbf{i}, \infty; \eta, \eta^*, 1/\zeta)$$

where  $\eta(z) = \frac{\mathbf{i}(z - q\mathbf{i})}{z + q\mathbf{i}} + s\mathbf{i}$ . (Note that we have  $0 < qt < 3 - 2\sqrt{2}$ , cf. Rem. 8.2.) Thus, by Step 1,  $-\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \tilde{\mathfrak{P}}} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}$  is reflection positive.

Clearly  $\tilde{\mathfrak{P}}\#_1\Omega = \mathfrak{P}\#_q\Omega$ . By Thm. 6.10-(b), the basic conformal block  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \tilde{\mathfrak{P}}} : \mathbb{W}'_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{V} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  satisfies

$$\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \tilde{\mathfrak{P}}} = \omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}} \circ (\mathbf{1} \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes q^{L_0}).$$

Therefore  $-\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}}\#_q\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}$  equals  $-\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \tilde{\mathfrak{P}}}\#_1\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}$ , which is reflection positive.

Step 3. Choose nonzero vectors  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{W}_2$ . Then by Step 2, for each  $0 < q < 1$  with  $\arg q = 0$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &\leq -\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \tilde{\mathfrak{P}}}\#_1\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}(\mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_2) \\ &= -\sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \tilde{\mathfrak{P}}}(\mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes P_n-) \cdot \overline{\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes P_n-)} \\ &= -\sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} q^n \cdot \omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}}(\mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes P_n-) \cdot \overline{\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes P_n-)} \end{aligned}$$

Let  $q \rightarrow 0$ . We obtain

$$-\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}}(\mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes \mathbf{1}) \cdot \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes \mathbf{1}) \geq 0.$$

By Prop. 6.12,  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}}(\mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes \mathbf{1})$  and  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes \mathbf{1})$  are  $> 0$ . This is impossible.  $\square$

## 9 Proof of Theorem 8.3

### 9.1 Part I

We prove Thm. 8.3 by relating the two sides of (8.8) to those of (8.14). We write for simplicity that

$$\mathbb{W}_{12} = \mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2.$$

First, we relate the RHS. We know that  $\Psi$  is essentially just  $\Pi(\cdot, s\mathbf{i})$  with  $\arg s\mathbf{i} = \pi/2$ . So we need to relate the conjugate conformal block  $\Psi^* : \mathbb{W}'_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}_{12} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  and the adjoint intertwining operator  $\Pi^\dagger = \Pi^{c*} = \mathcal{I}(\frac{\mathbb{W}_2}{\mathbb{W}'_1 \mathbb{W}_{12}})$ . Notice that by (8.4) and (8.5),

$$\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s\mathbf{i}}) = e^{s\mathbf{i}L_1} s^{-2L_0} \quad (\arg s = 0)$$

If we let  $\arg(s^{-1}\mathbf{i}) = \pi/2$ , then  $\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s^{-1}\mathbf{i}}) = e^{s^{-1}\mathbf{i}L_1} s^{2L_0}$  equals  $s^{2L_0} e^{s\mathbf{i}L_1}$  by (1.7). So

$$\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s^{-1}\mathbf{i}})^{-1}\mathbb{C} = \mathbb{C}\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s\mathbf{i}})$$

For each  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{W}_2, \nu \in \mathbb{W}_{12}$ , noticing (8.1), we calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \Pi(w_1, s\mathbf{i})w_2 | \nu \rangle &= \langle \Pi(w_1, s\mathbf{i})w_2, \mathbb{C}\nu \rangle \stackrel{(8.3)}{=} \langle w_2, \Pi^c(\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s\mathbf{i}})w_1, (s\mathbf{i})^{-1})\mathbb{C}\nu \rangle \\ &= \langle \Pi^c(\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s\mathbf{i}})w_1, (s\mathbf{i})^{-1})\mathbb{C}\nu | \mathbb{C}w_2 \rangle \stackrel{(8.2)}{=} \langle w_2 | \Pi^\dagger(\mathbb{C}\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s\mathbf{i}})w_1, s^{-1}\mathbf{i})\nu \rangle \\ &= \langle w_2 | \Pi^\dagger(\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s^{-1}\mathbf{i}})^{-1}\mathbb{C}w_1, s^{-1}\mathbf{i})\nu \rangle \end{aligned} \tag{9.1}$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}\Psi^*(\mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_2 \otimes \nu) &= \overline{\Psi(w_1 \otimes w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\nu)} = \overline{\langle \Pi(w_1, \mathbf{s}\mathbf{i})w_2 | \nu \rangle} \\ &= \langle \Pi^\dagger(\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s^{-1}\mathbf{i}})^{-1} \mathbb{C}w_1, s^{-1}\mathbf{i})\nu | w_2 \rangle\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, for each  $w_1, \tilde{w}_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1$  and  $w_2, \tilde{w}_2 \in \mathbb{W}_2$ ,

$$A\Psi\#_1\Psi^*(w_1 \otimes w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2) = \langle \Pi^\dagger(\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s^{-1}\mathbf{i}})^{-1} \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1, s^{-1}\mathbf{i})A\Pi(w_1, \mathbf{s}\mathbf{i})w_2 | \tilde{w}_2 \rangle \quad (9.2)$$

## 9.2 Part II

Next, we compare the LHS. This is the most nontrivial part of the proof. Let

$$\mathfrak{A} = (\mathbb{P}^1; \mathbf{s}\mathbf{i}, -\mathbf{i}; \zeta - \mathbf{s}\mathbf{i}, \varpi^{-1})$$

Since  $\mathfrak{A} \simeq (\mathbb{P}^1; 0, \infty; \zeta, \mu)$  for some Möbius coordinate  $\mu$  at  $\infty$ , using the change of coordinate formula (2.20), we can find a unique  $\tau$  such that

$$\tau \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{A}}^*(\mathbb{V} \otimes \mathbb{V}') \quad \tau(v \otimes v') = \langle a^{L_0} e^{bL_1} v, v' \rangle$$

for some complex numbers  $a \neq 0$  and  $b$ .  $\tau$  enjoys the property that for all  $v \in \mathbb{V}$ ,

$$\tau(v \otimes \mathbb{C}\mathbf{1}) = \langle v | \mathbf{1} \rangle \quad \tau(\mathbf{1} \otimes \mathbb{C}v) = \langle \mathbf{1} | v \rangle \quad (9.3)$$

**Discussion 9.1.** We sew  $\mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathfrak{Q}$  along  $-\mathbf{i} \in \mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathbf{i} \in \mathfrak{Q}$  (with respect to their local coordinates  $\varpi^{-1}$  and  $\varpi$ ). Note that since  $0 < s < 1$ , one can choose open disks centered at  $-\mathbf{i} \in \mathfrak{A}$  and at  $\mathbf{i} \in \mathfrak{Q}$  satisfying Asmp. 3.1 such that the product of their radii are greater than  $q = 1$ . Then we have an equivalence

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{A}\#_1\mathfrak{Q} &\simeq (\mathbb{P}^1; \mathbf{s}\mathbf{i}, 0, \infty; \zeta - \mathbf{s}\mathbf{i}, \zeta, 1/\zeta) \\ \gamma_0 &\in \mathfrak{A} \setminus \{-\mathbf{i}\} \simeq \gamma_0 \\ \gamma_2 &\in \mathfrak{Q} \setminus \{\mathbf{i}\} \simeq \gamma_2\end{aligned}$$

Since  $\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \mathfrak{Q}} \in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{Q}}^*(\mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2 \otimes \mathbb{V})$ , we obtain the corresponding sewing

$$\begin{aligned}\tau\#_1\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \mathfrak{Q}} &\in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{A}\#_1\mathfrak{Q}}^*(\mathbb{V} \otimes \mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2) \\ \tau\#_1\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \mathfrak{Q}}(v \otimes w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2) &= \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \tau(v \otimes P_n -) \cdot \overline{\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \mathfrak{Q}}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2 \otimes P_n -)}\end{aligned}$$

where the two  $-$  are contracted. (Cf. Thm. 3.6.)

**Lemma 9.2.** For each  $v \in \mathbb{V}$ ,  $w_2, \tilde{w}_2 \in \mathbb{W}_2$ ,

$$\tau\#_1\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \mathfrak{Q}}(v \otimes w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2) = \langle Y_{\mathbb{W}_2}(v, \mathbf{s}\mathbf{i})w_2, \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2 \rangle \quad (9.4)$$

*Proof.* Choose  $w_2, \tilde{w}_2 \in \mathbb{W}_2$ . Then  $\langle Y_{\mathbb{W}_2}(\mathbf{1}, \mathbf{s}\mathbf{i})w_2, \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2 \rangle = \langle w_2 | \tilde{w}_2 \rangle$ . By (9.3),

$$\begin{aligned}\tau\#_1\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \mathfrak{Q}}(\mathbf{1} \otimes w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2) &= \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \tau(\mathbf{1} \otimes P_n -) \cdot \overline{\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \mathfrak{Q}}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2 \otimes P_n -)} \\ &= \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \langle \mathbf{1}, P_n - \rangle \cdot \overline{\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \mathfrak{Q}}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2 \otimes P_n -)} = \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \mathfrak{Q}}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2 \otimes \mathbf{1})\end{aligned}$$

which is  $\langle w_2 | \tilde{w}_2 \rangle$  by Thm. 6.10-(a). So (9.4) is true when  $v = \mathbf{1}$ . Thus (9.4) is true for all  $v \in \mathbb{V}$  by Prop. 2.19, since both sides of (9.4) define elements of  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{Q}}^*(\mathbb{W}_2 \otimes \mathbb{W}'_2 \otimes \mathbb{V})$ .  $\square$

Let

$$\mathfrak{B} = \left( \mathbb{P}^1; s^{-1}\mathbf{i} - s\mathbf{i}, 0, \infty; \frac{1}{\zeta + s\mathbf{i}} + s\mathbf{i}, \zeta, 1/\zeta \right)$$

Then we have

$$\frac{1}{\zeta + s\mathbf{i}} + s\mathbf{i} = \vartheta_{s^{-1}\mathbf{i}} \circ (\zeta - (s^{-1}\mathbf{i} - s\mathbf{i}))$$

Therefore, by Prop. 2.20, we have a conformal block satisfying  $(\forall w_1, \tilde{w}_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, v \in \mathbb{V})$

$$\begin{aligned} \kappa &\in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{B}}^*(\mathbb{W}'_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{V}') \\ \kappa(\mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}v) &= \langle \Gamma_{\mathbb{W}_1}(\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s^{-1}\mathbf{i}})^{-1}\mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1, s^{-1}\mathbf{i} - s\mathbf{i})w_1 | v \rangle \end{aligned} \quad (9.5)$$

where we choose  $\arg(s^{-1}\mathbf{i} - s\mathbf{i}) = \pi/2$  so that (8.7b) is satisfied.

**Discussion 9.3.** We sew  $\mathfrak{B}$  and  $\mathfrak{A}$  along  $\infty \in \mathfrak{B}$  and  $s\mathbf{i} \in \mathfrak{A}$  (with respect to their local coordinates  $1/\zeta$  and  $\zeta - s\mathbf{i}$ ). Since  $1/2 < s < 1$  by (8.9), one can choose open disks centered at  $\infty \in \mathfrak{B}$  and  $s\mathbf{i} \in \mathfrak{A}$  satisfying Asmp. 3.1 such that the product of their radii are greater than  $q = 1$ . Then we have an equivalence

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{B} \#_1 \mathfrak{A} &\simeq \mathfrak{P} = (\mathbb{P}^1; t\mathbf{i}, -t\mathbf{i}, \infty; \varpi + s\mathbf{i}, \varpi^{-1} - s\mathbf{i}, 1/\zeta) \\ \gamma_1 \in \mathfrak{B} \setminus \{\infty\} &\simeq \varpi(\gamma_1 + s\mathbf{i}) \in \mathfrak{P} \\ \gamma_0 \in \mathfrak{A} \setminus \{s\mathbf{i}\} &\simeq \varpi(\gamma_0) \in \mathfrak{P} \end{aligned}$$

With respect to this sewing, and using the canonical identification  $\mathbb{C}\Theta : \mathbb{V} \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathbb{V}'$  (required in Def. 6.2), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \kappa \#_1 \tau &\in \mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{P}}^*(\mathbb{W}'_1 \otimes \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \mathbb{V}) \\ \kappa \#_1 \tau(\mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes v) &= \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \kappa(\mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes \overline{P_n -} \cdot \tau(\overline{P_n -}, v)) \end{aligned}$$

**Lemma 9.4.** *There exists  $\lambda_1 > 0$  such that*

$$\omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}} = \lambda_1 \cdot \kappa \#_1 \tau \quad (9.6)$$

*Proof.* Choose a non-zero lowest  $L_0$ -weight vector  $w_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1$  (so that  $L_1 w_1 = 0$ ). Then by (9.3) and (8.6),

$$\begin{aligned} \kappa \#_1 \tau(w_1 \otimes \mathbb{C}w_1 \otimes \mathbf{1}) &= \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \langle \Gamma_{\mathbb{W}_1}(\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s^{-1}\mathbf{i}})^{-1}\mathbb{C}w_1, s^{-1}\mathbf{i} - s\mathbf{i})w_1, \overline{P_n -} \rangle \cdot \tau(\overline{P_n -}, \mathbf{1}) \\ &= \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \langle \Gamma_{\mathbb{W}_1}(\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s^{-1}\mathbf{i}})^{-1}\mathbb{C}w_1, s^{-1}\mathbf{i} - s\mathbf{i})w_1, \overline{P_n -} \rangle \cdot \langle \overline{P_n -}, \mathbf{1} \rangle \\ &= \langle \Gamma_{\mathbb{W}_1}(\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s^{-1}\mathbf{i}})^{-1}\mathbb{C}w_1, s^{-1}\mathbf{i} - s\mathbf{i})w_1, \mathbf{1} \rangle \\ &= \langle w_1, e^{(s^{-1}\mathbf{i} - s\mathbf{i})^{-1}L_1} \mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s^{-1}\mathbf{i} - s\mathbf{i}}) \cdot \mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s^{-1}\mathbf{i}})^{-1}\mathbb{C}w_1 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

By  $L_1 w_1 = 0$  and (8.4), the above expression equals

$$\langle w_1, (s^{-1} - s)^{-2L_0} s^{-2L_0} \mathbb{C}w_1 \rangle = (s^{-1} - s)^{-2d} s^{-2d} \|w_1\|^2 > 0$$

if we let  $L_0 w_1 = dw_1$ . Thus, Prop. 6.12 proves the lemma.  $\square$

### 9.3 Part III

**Lemma 9.5.** *The sewing  $\kappa \#_1 \tau \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}$  converges absolutely. More precisely, for each  $w_1, \tilde{w}_1 \in \mathbb{W}, w_2, \tilde{w}_2 \in \mathbb{W}_2$ , the following double series converges absolutely:*

$$\begin{aligned} & \kappa \#_1 \tau \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}(\mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2) \\ &= \sum_{n, k \in \mathbb{N}} \kappa(\mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes P_n-) \cdot \overline{\tau(P_n-, P_k-)} \cdot \overline{\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2 \otimes P_k-)} \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* This follows from Thm. 3.6, as long as we can check that Asmp. 3.1 is satisfied, and that the  $r_j, \rho_j$  as in Def. 3.2 can be chosen such that  $r_1\rho_1 > 1, r_2\rho_2 > 1$  (because the sewing parameters are  $q_1 = q_2 = 1$ ). Note that we are sewing  $\mathfrak{B} \sqcup \mathfrak{A} \sqcup \Omega$  simultaneously along two pairs of points: the first pair is  $\infty \in \mathfrak{B}$  and  $s\mathbf{i} \in \mathfrak{A}$ , and the second one is  $-\mathbf{i} \in \mathfrak{A}$  and  $\mathbf{i} \in \Omega$ . The local coordinates for these points are respectively  $\xi_1 = 1/\zeta, \mu_1 = \zeta - s\mathbf{i}, \xi_2 = \varpi^{-1}, \mu_2 = \varpi$ . (See Discussions 9.3 and 9.1.)

As for the first pair of points, we choose neighborhoods  $W'_1 \ni \infty$  and  $W''_1 \ni s\mathbf{i}$  as follows. Note that if  $1/\sqrt{2} < s < 1$  (cf. (8.9)) then  $0 < (s^{-1} - s) < 1/\sqrt{2}$ . Let  $W'_1 \subset \mathfrak{B}$  and  $W''_1 \subset \mathfrak{A}$  be

$$\begin{aligned} W'_1 &= \eta_1^{-1}(\mathbb{D}_{\sqrt{2}}) = \{z \in \mathbb{P}^1 : |1/z| < \sqrt{2}\} && \subset \mathfrak{B} \\ W''_1 &= \mu_1^{-1}(\mathbb{D}_{as}) = \{z \in \mathbb{P}^1 : |z - s\mathbf{i}| < as\} && \subset \mathfrak{A} \end{aligned}$$

where  $0 < a < 1$  is such that  $\sqrt{2}as > 1$ . Such  $a$  exists because  $\sqrt{2}s > 1$ . As for the second pair, we choose neighborhoods  $W'_2 \ni -\mathbf{i}, W''_2 \ni \mathbf{i}$  to be

$$\begin{aligned} W'_2 &= \eta_2^{-1}(\mathbb{D}_b) = \{z \in \mathbb{P}^1 : |\varpi^{-1}(z)| < b\} && \subset \mathfrak{A} \\ W''_2 &= \mu_2^{-1}(\mathbb{D}_1) = \{z \in \mathbb{P}^1 : |\varpi(z)| < 1\} && \subset \Omega \end{aligned}$$

where  $b > 1$  is such that  $W''_1$  and  $W'_2$  (which are both open discs in  $\mathfrak{A}$ ) do not intersect. Such  $b$  exists because the closure of  $W''_1$  (which is  $\{z \in \mathbb{P}^1 : |z - s\mathbf{i}| \leq as\}$ ) does not intersect the closure of  $\eta_2^{-1}(\mathbb{D}_1)$  (which is  $\{z \in \mathbb{P}^1 : \text{Im}(z) \leq 0\}$ ).

Now, Asmp. 3.1 is satisfied (namely, the disks  $W_1, W''_1, W'_2, W''_2$  are mutually disjoint, and each disk contains only one one of the marked points of  $\mathfrak{B} \sqcup \mathfrak{A} \sqcup \mathfrak{P}$ ), and we have  $r_1\rho_1 > 1, r_2\rho_2 > 1$  where  $r_1 = \sqrt{2}, \rho_1 = as, r_2 = b, \rho_2 = 1$ .  $\square$

**Proof of Thm. 8.3.** By Lem. 9.4, for any  $w_1, \tilde{w}_1 \in \mathbb{W}_1, w_2, \tilde{w}_2 \in \mathbb{W}_2$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}} \#_1 \omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}(\mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2) \\ &= \sum_{k \in \mathbb{N}} \omega_{\mathbb{W}'_1, \mathfrak{P}}(\mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes P_k-) \cdot \overline{\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2 \otimes P_k-)} \\ &= \lambda_1 \sum_{n, k \in \mathbb{N}} \kappa(\mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes P_n-) \cdot \overline{\tau(P_n-, P_k-)} \cdot \overline{\omega_{\mathbb{W}_2, \Omega}(w_2 \otimes \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2 \otimes P_k-)} \end{aligned}$$

which converges absolutely as a double series by Lem. 9.5. (In particular, the two infinite sums commute.) By Lem. 9.2 and (9.5), this expression equals

$$\lambda_1 \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \kappa(\mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1 \otimes w_1 \otimes P_n-) \cdot \overline{\langle Y_{\mathbb{W}_2}(P_n-, s\mathbf{i})w_2, \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2 \rangle}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \lambda_1 \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \langle \Gamma_{\mathbb{W}_1}(\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s^{-1}\mathbf{i}})^{-1} \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1, s^{-1}\mathbf{i} - s\mathbf{i})_{w_1, P_n} \rangle \cdot \overline{\langle Y_{\mathbb{W}_2}(P_n, s\mathbf{i})_{w_2, \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_2} \rangle} \\
&= \lambda_1 \langle Y_{\mathbb{W}_2}(\Gamma_{\mathbb{W}_1}(\mathcal{U}_0(\vartheta_{s^{-1}\mathbf{i}})^{-1} \mathbb{C}\tilde{w}_1, s^{-1}\mathbf{i} - s\mathbf{i})_{w_1, s\mathbf{i}})_{w_2} | \tilde{w}_2 \rangle
\end{aligned}$$

By (8.8), this expression equals  $\lambda_1$  times the RHS of (9.2). The proof is completed.  $\square$

## 10 Application to orbifold VOAs

Recall that if  $\mathbb{V}$  is CFT-type, self-dual (e.g. when  $\mathbb{V}$  is unitary),  $C_2$ -cofinite, and rational (namely, if  $\mathbb{V}$  is **strongly rational**), then  $\text{Mod}(\mathbb{V})$  of  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules is a modular tensor category [Hua08].

**Definition 10.1.** If  $\mathbb{V}$  is a CFT-type, unitary,  $C_2$ -cofinite, and rational VOA, we say that  $\mathbb{V}$  is **completely unitary** if all irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules are unitarizable, and if for each irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2$ , the fusion product  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is positive (recall Def. 8.3).

**Remark 10.2.** Note that if  $\mathbb{W}$  is an irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules, then the unitary structures on  $\mathbb{W}$  are clearly unique up to positive scalar multiplications. Also, it was shown in [Gui19b] that if  $\mathbb{V}$  is completely unitary then the category  $\text{Mod}^u(\mathbb{V})$  of unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules is a unitary modular tensor category.

### 10.1 General results

In this subsection, we assume that  $\mathbb{V}$  is a CFT-type unitary  $C_2$ -cofinite and rational VOA. Let  $G$  be a finite group of unitary automorphisms of  $\mathbb{V}$ . (Thus, each  $g \in G$  is act unitarily on  $\mathbb{V}$ , and satisfies  $gY(v, z) = Y(gv, z)g$  for all  $v \in \mathbb{V}$ .) It is natural to ask whether the fixed point subalgebra  $\mathbb{V}^G = \{v \in \mathbb{V} : gv = v, \forall g \in G\}$  is completely unitary. (Certainly  $\mathbb{V}^G$  is unitary.)

Notice that by [Miy15, CM16], if  $G$  is solvable, then  $\mathbb{V}^G$  is  $C_2$ -cofinite and rational. Then, by [Hua09],  $\text{Mod}(\mathbb{V})$  is a modular tensor category.

**Definition 10.3.** We say that  $\mathbb{V}$  is a **unitary holomorphic VOA** if  $\mathbb{V}$  is CFT-type, unitary,  $C_2$ -cofinite, rational, and if every irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -module is isomorphic to  $\mathbb{V}$ .

**Theorem 10.4.** *Let  $\mathbb{V}$  be a unitary holomorphic VOA, and let  $G$  be a finite cyclic group (i.e.  $G \simeq \mathbb{Z}_n$  for some  $n$ ) of unitary automorphisms of  $\mathbb{V}$ . Assume that every irreducible  $\mathbb{V}^G$ -module is unitarizable. Then  $\mathbb{V}^G$  is completely unitary.*

We will discuss the non-cyclic or even non-abelian case in future works.

*Proof.* Since  $G$  is cyclic,  $\text{Mod}(\mathbb{V})$  is pointed (namely, the fusion product of any two irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is irreducible). This fact is due to [vEMS20, Prop. 5.6]. It also follows from the general fact that if  $\mathbb{V}$  is holomorphic and if  $\mathbb{V}^G$  is  $C_2$ -cofinite and rational (which is automatic when  $G$  is solvable [Miy15, CM16]) then  $\text{Mod}(\mathbb{V})$  is isomorphic to the twisted Drinfeld double  $D^\omega(G)$  for some  $\omega \in H^3(G, \mathbb{C}^\times)$  (cf. [DNR21, Thm. 6.2], or also [Kir04, McR21] for a general discussion of the relationship between the categories of  $\mathbb{V}^G$ -modules and twisted  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules without assuming that  $\mathbb{V}$  is holomorphic), together with

the fact that if  $G$  is cyclic then  $D^\omega(G)$  is pointed because  $H^2(G, \mathbb{C}^\times)$  is trivial ([MN01, Cor. 3.6]). Choose any unitary structures on  $\mathbb{W}_1$  and  $\mathbb{W}_2$ . Then the fusion product  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is positive by Thm. 8.6. So  $\mathbb{V}^G$  is completely unitary.  $\square$

In practice, one can show that all irreducible  $\mathbb{V}^G$ -modules are unitarizable by showing that all irreducible  $G$ -twisted modules are unitarizable. For the readers' convenience, we recall the following definition of twisted modules when  $\mathbb{V}^G$  is  $C_2$ -cofinite. This definition can be easily translated to the tensor-categorical language as in [Kir02, Kir04, McR21]. For the definition for general VOAs, see for instance [DL96, Sec. 7].

**Definition 10.5.** Let  $g \in G$ . A  $g$ -**twisted module** denotes  $(\mathcal{W}, Y_{\mathcal{W}})$ , where  $\mathcal{W}$  is a  $\mathbb{V}^G$ -module, and  $Y_{\mathcal{W}}$  is type  $(\begin{smallmatrix} \mathcal{W} \\ \mathbb{V} \end{smallmatrix} \mathcal{W})$ -intertwining operator of  $\mathbb{V}^G$  satisfying the following conditions:

- (1) For each  $v_1, v_2 \in \mathbb{V}$  and  $z, z' \in \mathbb{C}^\times$  satisfying  $0 < |z_1 - z_2| < |z_2| < |z_1|$  and  $\arg(z_1 - z_2) = \arg z_2 = \arg z_1$ , we have the fusion relation

$$Y_{\mathcal{W}}(v_1, z_1)Y_{\mathcal{W}}(v_2, z_2) = Y_{\mathcal{W}}(Y(v_1, z_1 - z_2)v_2, z_2) \quad (10.1)$$

understood in the same way as (8.8), namely, for each  $w \in \mathcal{W}, w' \in \mathcal{W}'$  we have

$$\sum_{r \in \mathbb{C}} \langle Y_{\mathcal{W}}(v_1, z_1)P_r Y_{\mathcal{W}}(v_2, z_2)w, w' \rangle = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \langle Y_{\mathcal{W}}(P_n Y(v_1, z_1 - z_2)v_2, z_2)w, w' \rangle$$

where both sides converge absolutely by [Hua05] or Thm. 3.6.

- (2) For each  $v \in \mathbb{V}$  and  $z \in \mathbb{C}^\times$  with chosen  $\arg z$ , if we let  $e^{2i\pi}z$  have argument  $2\pi + \arg z$ , then

$$Y_{\mathcal{W}}(v, z) = Y_{\mathcal{W}}(gv, e^{2i\pi}z) \quad (10.2)$$

Similar to untwisted modules, we abbreviate  $Y_{\mathcal{W}}$  to  $Y$  when the context is clear.

**Remark 10.6.** The above definition of twisted modules is exactly the same as that in [McR21], and also applies to the general case that  $G$  is a finite group of (non-necessarily unitary) automorphisms of a (non-necessarily unitary) VOA  $\mathbb{V}$  satisfying that  $\mathbb{V}^G$  is  $C_2$ -cofinite. It also agrees with the usual definition using (algebraic) Jacobi identity, which does not require  $\mathbb{V}^G$  to be  $C_2$ -cofinite. See [Hua10].

**Remark 10.7.** The above definition depends only on the automorphism  $g$  but not on the group  $G$ . In fact, if we let  $H = \langle g \rangle$  be the finite cyclic group generated by  $g$ , then the definition of  $g$ -twisted modules using  $H$  is clearly equal to the one using  $G$ .

**Definition 10.8.** Let  $g$  be a unitary automorphism of  $\mathbb{V}$  with finite order. A  $g$ -twisted  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathcal{W}$ , together with an inner product on  $\mathcal{W}$ , is called a **unitary  $g$ -twisted  $\mathbb{V}$ -module**, if for each  $v \in \mathbb{V}, w_1, w_2 \in \mathcal{W}$  and  $z \in \mathbb{C}^\times$  with chosen  $\arg z$  we have

$$\langle Y_{\mathcal{W}}(v, z)w_1 | w_2 \rangle = \langle w_1 | Y_{\mathcal{W}}(e^{\bar{z}L_1}(-\bar{z}^{-2})^{L_0}\Theta v, \bar{z}^{-1})w_2 \rangle \quad (10.3)$$

Here, we assume  $\arg \bar{z} = -\arg z$ .

By  $G$ -twisted  $\mathbb{V}$ -module, we mean a  $g$ -twisted  $\mathbb{V}$ -module where  $g \in G$ .

**Proposition 10.9.** *Let  $\mathbb{V}$  be a CFT-type unitary VOA, and let  $G$  be a finite unitary automorphism group of  $\mathbb{V}$  such that  $\mathbb{V}^G$  is an (automatically unitary)  $C_2$ -cofinite rational VOA. Suppose that every irreducible  $G$ -twisted  $\mathbb{V}$ -module is unitarizable (i.e. admits a (necessarily unique up to scalar multiplications) unitary structure). Then every irreducible  $\mathbb{V}^G$ -module is unitarizable.*

Therefore, the assumption in Thm. 10.4 on the unitarizable of irreducible  $\mathbb{V}^G$ -modules is satisfied if every  $G$ -twisted  $\mathbb{V}$ -module is unitarizable.

*Proof.* This follows from the fact that every irreducible  $\mathbb{V}^G$ -module is a submodule of a irreducible  $G$ -twisted  $\mathbb{V}$ -module (considered as a  $\mathbb{V}^G$ -module), cf. [DRX17] or [McR21].  $\square$

**Remark 10.10.** Many examples satisfy the assumptions of Thm. 10.4. For instance, Lam showed in [Lam23] that if  $V$  is an even lattice VOA  $V_L$ , then for many finite-order unitary automorphisms  $g$  of  $V$  (including all standard lifts from the isometries of the lattice  $L$ ), all  $g^n$ -twisted  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules are unitary (where  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ ). Thus, if  $L$  is unimodular (i.e. self-dual) so that  $V_L$  is holomorphic, we know from Thm. 10.4 that  $V_L^{\langle g \rangle}$  is completely unitary.

In the next subsection, we show that another large class of orbifold VOAs satisfy the assumptions of Thm. 10.4.

## 10.2 Examples: permutation orbifold VOAs

Let  $\mathbb{V}$  be unitary. Let  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_+$ . Choose a permutation  $g \in \text{Aut}\{1, 2, \dots, k\}$ . Then  $g$  is naturally an automorphism of  $\mathbb{V}^{\otimes k}$ :

$$g(v_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes v_k) = v_{g^{-1}(1)} \otimes \cdots \otimes v_{g^{-1}(k)}$$

Note that the PCT operator  $\Theta$  on  $\mathbb{V}^{\otimes k}$  is  $\Theta \otimes \cdots \otimes \Theta$ .

We first consider the special case that  $g = (12 \dots k)$ . Then irreducible  $g$ -twisted modules are classified in [BDM02]. We briefly recall the construction. (See also [Gui21, Sec. 10].)

Choose a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}$ . Then on the same vector space  $\mathbb{W}$  there is a canonical  $g$ -twisted module structure. To avoid confusions, we write  $\mathbb{W}$  as  $\mathcal{W}$  when we consider it as a  $g$ -twisted modules. So  $\mathbb{W}$  and  $\mathcal{W}$  are equal as vector spaces. We write the vertex operation of  $\mathcal{W}$  as  $Y_{\mathcal{W}}^g$  or simply  $Y^g$ . The  $g$ -twisted module  $(\mathcal{W}, Y_{\mathcal{W}}^g)$  is uniquely determined by the fact that if  $u \in \mathbb{V}$  then

$$Y_{\mathcal{W}}^g(u \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{1}, z) = Y_{\mathbb{W}}(\mathcal{U}(\delta_{k,z})u, \sqrt[k]{z})$$

where  $\arg \sqrt[k]{z} = \frac{1}{k} \arg z$  and  $\delta_{k,z} \in \mathbb{G}$  is defined by

$$\delta_{k,z}(t) = (z + t)^{\frac{1}{k}} - z^{\frac{1}{k}}$$

See [BDM02, Thm. 3.9].



**Remark 10.11.** Since  $\mathbb{V}^{\otimes k}$  is generated by vectors of the form  $u \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{1}$  and their permutations by  $g^j$  (where  $j \in \mathbb{Z}$ ), the uniqueness mentioned above is an easy consequence of (10.2) and the Jacobi identity for twisted vertex operators (cf. [DLM98, (3.4)], or [Gui21, Rem. 10.1] if one prefers to expand the delta functions).

**Lemma 10.12.** *Let  $g = (1, \dots, k)$ . Assume that  $\mathbb{W}$  is a unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module, and define the inner product on  $\mathcal{W}$  to be the same as that of  $\mathbb{W}$ . Then the  $g$ -twisted  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $(\mathcal{W}, Y_{\mathcal{W}}^g)$  is unitary.*

*Proof.* We need to show that for each  $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{V}^{\otimes k}$  and  $w_1, w_2 \in \mathcal{W}$ ,

$$\langle Y_{\mathcal{W}}^g(\mathbf{v}, z)w_1 | w_2 \rangle = \langle w_1 | Y_{\mathcal{W}}^g(e^{\bar{z}L_1}(-\bar{z}^{-2})^{L_0}\Theta\mathbf{v}, \bar{z}^{-1})w_2 \rangle \quad (10.4)$$

Equivalently (cf. the end of Rem. 4.4), if we let  $\mathbb{C} : \mathbb{W} \rightarrow \mathbb{W}'$  denote the canonical antiunitary map, and denote its inverse also by  $\mathbb{C}$ , then we need to prove

$$Y_{\mathcal{W}}^g(\mathbf{v}, z) = \mathbb{C}Y_{\mathcal{W}'}^{g^{-1}}(\Theta\mathbf{v}, \bar{z})\mathbb{C} \quad (10.5)$$

where  $Y_{\mathcal{W}'}^{g^{-1}}$  is the contragredient intertwining operator of the type  $(\binom{\mathcal{W}}{\mathbb{V}}_{\mathcal{W}'})$  intertwining operator  $Y_{\mathcal{W}'}^g$  of  $\mathbb{V}^{\langle g \rangle}$ . By [Hua18, Prop. 3.3], if we let  $\mathcal{W}'$  be equal to  $\mathbb{W}'$  as vector spaces, then  $(\mathcal{W}', Y_{\mathcal{W}'}^{g^{-1}})$  is a  $g^{-1}$ -twisted  $\mathbb{V}^{\otimes k}$ -module. From this, it is easy to see that  $(\mathcal{W}, \tilde{Y}_{\mathcal{W}}^g)$  is a  $g$ -twisted module if we define  $\tilde{Y}_{\mathcal{W}}^g(\mathbf{v}, z) = \mathbb{C}Y_{\mathcal{W}'}^{g^{-1}}(\Theta\mathbf{v}, \bar{z})\mathbb{C}$ . Therefore, since  $g$ -twisted vertex operations are determined by their values on  $\mathbf{v} = u \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{1}$  for all  $u \in \mathbb{V}$  (as discussed in Rem. 10.11), it suffices to prove (10.5) (equivalently, to prove (10.4)) whenever  $\mathbf{v} = u \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{1}$ .

Let  $\mathbf{v} = u \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{1}$ . Recall (cf. Exp. 2.1) that  $\vartheta_z(t) = (z+t)^{-1} - z^{-1}$  and  $\mathcal{U}(\vartheta_z) = e^{zL_1}(-z^{-2})^{L_0}$ . Then

$$\delta_{k,z^{-1}} \circ \vartheta_z(t) = (z+t)^{-\frac{1}{k}} - z^{-\frac{1}{k}} = \vartheta_{z^{\frac{1}{k}}}(t) \circ \delta_{k,z}(t).$$

Therefore, by Thm. 1.12 we have  $\mathcal{U}(\delta_{k,z^{-1}})\mathcal{U}(\vartheta_z) = \mathcal{U}(\vartheta_{z^{1/k}})\mathcal{U}(\delta_{k,z})$ . So

$$Y_{\mathcal{W}}^g(e^{zL_1}(-z)^{L_0}\mathbf{v}, z^{-1}) = Y_{\mathbb{W}}(\mathcal{U}(\delta_{k,z^{-1}})\mathcal{U}(\vartheta_z)u, z^{-1/k}) = Y_{\mathbb{W}}(\mathcal{U}(\vartheta_{z^{1/k}})\mathcal{U}(\delta_{k,z})u, z^{-1/k}).$$

Replace  $z$  with  $\bar{z}$  and  $u$  with  $\Theta u$ , we get (recall (4.1) and (1.2))

$$\begin{aligned} \langle w_1 | Y_{\mathcal{W}}^g(e^{\bar{z}L_1}(-\bar{z}^{-2})^{L_0}\Theta\mathbf{v}, \bar{z}^{-1})w_2 \rangle &= \langle w_1 | Y_{\mathbb{W}}(\mathcal{U}(\vartheta_{\bar{z}^{1/k}})\mathcal{U}(\delta_{k,\bar{z}})\Theta u, \bar{z}^{-1/k})w_2 \rangle \\ &= \langle w_1 | Y_{\mathbb{W}}(\mathcal{U}(\vartheta_{\bar{z}^{1/k}})\Theta\mathcal{U}(\delta_{k,z})u, \bar{z}^{-1/k})w_2 \rangle = \langle Y_{\mathbb{W}}(\mathcal{U}(\delta_{k,z})u, z^{1/k})w_1 | w_2 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

which equals the LHS of (10.4). This proves (10.4).  $\square$

Now consider an arbitrary permutation  $g \in \text{Aut}\{1, 2, \dots, k\}$ . Then  $g$  is a product of disjoint cycles  $g = g_1 \cdots g_l$ . Let  $k_j$  be the order of  $g_j$ . So  $k_1 + \cdots + k_l = k$ . Let  $s_0 = 0$  and  $s_j = k_1 + \cdots + k_j$  if  $1 \leq j \leq l$ . Without loss of generality, we may assume

$$g_j = (s_{j-1} + 1, s_{j-1} + 2, \dots, s_j)$$

For each  $1 \leq j \leq l$ , choose a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}_j$ . By [BDM02, Thm. 7.10], we have a  $g$ -twisted  $\mathbb{V}^{\otimes k}$ -module on  $\mathcal{W} = \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{W}_l$ , where the vertex operation  $Y_{\mathcal{W}}^g$  is determined by

$$\begin{aligned} & Y_{\mathcal{W}}^g(v_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes v_k, z)(w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes w_l) \\ &= \bigotimes_{j=1}^l Y_{\mathbb{W}_j}^{g_j}(v_{s_{j-1}+1} \otimes v_{s_{j-1}+2} \otimes \cdots \otimes v_{s_j}, z)w_j \end{aligned} \quad (10.6)$$

By Lem. 10.12, one easily obtains:

**Proposition 10.13.** *Let  $g \in \text{Aut}\{1, \dots, k\}$ , and use the above notations. Assume that each  $\mathbb{W}_j$  is a unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module, and define the inner product on  $\mathcal{W}$  to be the natural one on  $\mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{W}_l$ . Then the  $g$ -twisted  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $(\mathcal{W}, Y_{\mathcal{W}}^g)$  defined by (10.6) is unitary.*

**Theorem 10.14.** *Let  $\mathbb{V}$  be a unitary holomorphic VOA, let  $k \in \mathbb{Z}_+$ , and let  $G$  be a cyclic abelian subgroup of  $\text{Aut}\{1, 2, \dots, k\}$ . Then the fixed point subalgebra  $(\mathbb{V}^{\otimes k})^G$  is completely unitary.*

*Proof.* By [BDM02, Thm. 7.10], every irreducible  $G$ -twisted  $\mathbb{V}^{\otimes k}$ -module is of the form  $(\mathcal{W}, Y_{\mathcal{W}}^g)$  (as defined in (10.6), where  $\mathbb{W}_1 = \cdots = \mathbb{W}_l = \mathbb{V}$  because  $\mathbb{V}$  is holomorphic), which is unitarizable by Prop. 10.13. Thus, by Prop. 10.9, every irreducible  $(\mathbb{V}^{\otimes k})^G$ -module is unitarizable. This finishes the proof, thanks to Thm. 10.4.  $\square$

## 11 Application to simple current extensions

**Definition 11.1.** If  $\mathbb{V}$  is a VOA, then a **VOA extension** of  $\mathbb{V}$  is a VOA  $\mathbb{U}$  containing  $\mathbb{V}$  as a subspace such that the vertex operation of  $\mathbb{U}$  restricts to that of  $\mathbb{V}$ , and that  $\mathbb{U}$  and  $\mathbb{V}$  share the same vacuum vector and conformal vector.

If  $\mathbb{V}$  is a unitary VOA, a VOA extension  $\mathbb{U}$  of  $\mathbb{V}$  is called **preunitarizable** if  $\mathbb{U}$  is unitarizable as a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module.  $\square$

Given a preunitarizable VOA extension  $\mathbb{U}$  of a unitary VOA  $\mathbb{V}$ , the following proposition clarifies the relationship between CFT-type, simpleness, and Haploidity (in case  $\text{Mod}(\mathbb{V})$  is good enough such that  $\mathbb{U}$  is an algebra object in  $\text{Mod}(\mathbb{V})$  in the sense of [KO02, CKM17]) of  $\mathbb{U}$ .

**Proposition 11.2.** *Let  $\mathbb{V}$  be a unitary VOA. Let  $\mathbb{U}$  be a preunitarizable VOA extension of  $\mathbb{V}$ . The following are true.*

- (1)  $\mathbb{U}$  is of CFT-type if and only if  $\dim \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{V}, \mathbb{U}) = 1$ .
- (2) If  $\mathbb{U}$  is a simple VOA, then  $\mathbb{U}$  is of CFT-type.
- (3) Assume that  $\mathbb{U}$  is a completely reducible  $\mathbb{U}$ -module (e.g. when  $\mathbb{U}$  is unitary, or when  $\mathbb{U}$  is rational). If  $\mathbb{U}$  is of CFT-type, then  $\mathbb{U}$  is a simple VOA.

Note that we are not assuming  $\mathbb{V}$  to be of CFT-type. When  $\mathbb{U} = \mathbb{V}$ , (2) and (3) are [CKLW18, Prop. 5.3].

*Proof.* Thm. 2.17 implies

$$\dim \text{End}_{\mathbb{U}}(\mathbb{U}) = \dim \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{V}, \mathbb{U}) = \dim \mathbb{U}(0) \quad (11.1)$$

So  $\mathbb{U}(0) = \mathbb{C}1$  iff  $\dim \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{V}}(\mathbb{V}, \mathbb{U}) = 1$ . This proves (1). If  $\mathbb{U}$  is a simple VOA, then  $\dim \text{End}_{\mathbb{U}}(\mathbb{U}) = 1$ . This proves (2). Assume that  $\mathbb{U}$  is a completely reducible  $\mathbb{U}$ -module. If  $\mathbb{U}$  is of CFT-type, then  $\dim \text{End}_{\mathbb{U}}(\mathbb{U}) = 1$ . So  $\mathbb{U}$  is simple (cf. Rem. 1.3). This proves (3).  $\square$

Now we assume that  $\mathbb{V}$  is CFT-type, self-dual,  $C_2$ -cofinite, and rational (i.e.  $\mathbb{V}$  is **strongly-rational**). In particular,  $\mathbb{V}$  is simple [CKLW18, Prop. 4.6-(iv)]. Then  $\text{Mod}(\mathbb{V})$  is rigid modular, and so every  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}$  has a categorical dual, which is isomorphic to the contragredient  $\mathbb{W}'$ , cf. [Hua08]. Recall that a **simple current** of  $\mathbb{V}$  is a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{W}$  which is invertible, i.e. there is a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module  $\mathbb{M}$  such that  $\mathbb{W} \boxtimes \mathbb{M} \simeq \mathbb{V}$ . In that case  $\mathbb{M}$  must be the categorical dual of  $\mathbb{W}$ , and hence  $\mathbb{M} \simeq \mathbb{W}'$ . Simple currents are clearly irreducible modules. The class of simple currents is clearly closed under taking  $\boxtimes$  and taking contragredient.

A (finite) **simple current extension** of  $\mathbb{V}$  is a VOA extension  $\mathbb{U}$  which is a simple VOA and which, as a  $\mathbb{V}$ -module, is a finite direct sum of simple currents of  $\mathbb{V}$ .

**Remark 11.3.** Let  $\mathbb{U}$  be a simple current extension of  $\mathbb{V}$ . Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be the set of equivalence classes of all these currents. Then it is well-known that  $\mathcal{G}$  is closed under taking  $\boxtimes$  and taking contragredient. (Quick proof: The vertex operation  $Y^{\mathbb{U}}$  of  $\mathbb{U}$  is a type  $\binom{\mathbb{U}}{\mathbb{U}\mathbb{U}}$  intertwining operator of  $\mathbb{V}$ . Choose simple currents  $W_1, W_2$  appearing in  $\mathbb{V}$ . Then  $Y^{\mathbb{U}}$  restricts to a type  $\binom{\mathbb{U}}{\mathbb{W}_1\mathbb{W}_2}$  intertwining operator which is non-zero by Prop. 2.19 and that  $\mathbb{U}$  is simple. So it restricts to a type  $\binom{\mathbb{W}_3}{\mathbb{W}_1\mathbb{W}_2}$  one for some simple current  $\mathbb{W}_3$  inside  $\mathbb{U}$ . Hence  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2 \simeq \mathbb{W}_3$  is in  $\mathbb{U}$ . Similarly, if  $\mathbb{W}$  is a simple current in  $\mathbb{U}$ , then  $Y^{\mathbb{U}}$  restricts to a non-zero type  $\binom{\mathbb{V}}{\mathbb{W}\mathbb{U}}$  intertwining operator, and hence restricts to a non-zero type  $\binom{\mathbb{V}}{\mathbb{W}\mathbb{M}}$  one where  $\mathbb{M}$  is a simple current in  $\mathbb{U}$ . Then  $\mathbb{W} \boxtimes \mathbb{M} \simeq \mathbb{V}$  and hence  $\mathbb{W}' \simeq \mathbb{M}$  is in  $\mathbb{U}$ .)

Note that if  $\mathbb{V}$  is also unitary, then by Prop. 11.2, a preunitarizable simple current extension of  $\mathbb{V}$  is of CFT-type.

We need an auxiliary result:

**Proposition 11.4.** *Let  $\mathbb{V}$  be a CFT-type, unitary,  $C_2$ -cofinite, and rational VOA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a full abelian  $C^*$ -subcategory of the  $C^*$ -category of unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules. For each  $\mathbb{W}_1, \mathbb{W}_2 \in \mathcal{C}$ , assume that the  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  and  $\mathbb{W}_1'$  are isomorphic to some objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , assume that the fusion product  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  is positive, and choose the unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -module structure on  $\mathbb{W}_1 \boxtimes \mathbb{W}_2$  under which the operator  $A$  in (8.8) is 1. Then  $\mathcal{C}$ , together with  $\boxtimes$  and the associators and the braiding  $\beta$  and the unitors of  $\text{Mod}(\mathbb{V})$ , is a unitary ribbon fusion category.*

Roughly speaking, by saying  $\mathcal{C}$  is a full abelian  $C^*$ -subcategory, we mean that  $\mathcal{C}$  is closed under taking direct sums and unitary submodules, and that the morphisms between objects are homomorphisms of  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules.

*Proof.* If all  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules are unitarizable, and if  $\mathcal{C}$  is the category of all unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules, then this proposition is [Gui19b, Thm. 7.9]. In the general case, the proof is the same as that the  $\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{F}\boxtimes}^{\mathbb{U}}(\mathbb{V})$  in [Gui19b, Thm. 7.8] is a unitary ribbon fusion category.  $\square$

**Theorem 11.5.** *Let  $\mathbb{V}$  be a CFT-type, unitary,  $C_2$ -cofinite, and rational VOA. Let  $\mathbb{U}$  be a preunitarizable simple current extension of  $\mathbb{V}$ . Then the inner product on  $\mathbb{V}$  can be extended uniquely to an inner product  $\langle \cdot | \cdot \rangle$  on  $\mathbb{U}$  such that  $\mathbb{U}$  is a unitary VOA.*

We call such  $(\mathbb{U}, \langle \cdot | \cdot \rangle)$  (satisfying the last sentence of Thm. 11.5) a **unitary VOA extension** of  $\mathbb{V}$ . In the special case that  $\mathbb{U}$  is a direct sum of two simple currents, this theorem was proved by [DL14, Thm. 3.3] under some small additional assumption; see also [CGH23, Thm. 3.11] for a related result in the case of vertex operator superalgebras.

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be as in Rem. 11.3. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be the  $C^*$ -category of unitary  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules that are (equivalent to) finite direct sums of unitary irreducible  $\mathbb{V}$ -modules in  $\mathcal{G}$ . If the  $*$ -structure is forgotten,  $\mathcal{C}$  is a full abelian subcategory of  $\text{Mod}(\mathbb{V})$ . Moreover, Rem. 11.3 shows that  $\mathcal{C}$  is closed under  $\boxtimes$  and taking contragredient modules. Therefore, by Thm. 8.6,  $\mathcal{C}$  satisfies the assumptions in Prop. 11.4 and hence is a unitary ribbon fusion category. Thus, we can use the same argument as in the proof of [CGGH23, Thm. 4.7] to prove that  $\mathbb{U}$  is uniquely a unitary VOA extension by invoking Thm. 3.2 and Thm. 3.9 of [CGGH23]. (Note that one needs the fact that  $\mathbb{U}$ , as a Haploid algebra in  $\mathcal{C}$ , is rigid. This follows from [KO02, Lem. 1.20] because  $\mathbb{U}$  as an object in  $\mathcal{C}$  has strictly positive quantum dimension as  $\mathcal{C}$  is a unitary fusion category.)  $\square$

# Index

- $A^{\text{cl}} = \{\text{closure of } A\}$ , 7
- $C^*$ , conjugate Riemann surface, 28
- $\mathbb{D}_{r_\bullet, \rho_\bullet}, \mathbb{D}_{r_\bullet, \rho_\bullet}^\times$ , 24
- $f^* \in \mathcal{O}(U^*)$ , the conjugate of  $f \in \mathcal{O}(U)$ , 28
- $\mathbb{G}$ , 11
- $\mathbb{G}_+$ , 12
- $H^0(C, \mathcal{E}), H^0(C, \mathcal{E}(\star x_\bullet))$ , 8
- $\mathcal{H}_{\mathbb{W}}$ , the Hilbert space completion of  $\mathbb{W}$ , 27
- $\mathcal{I}(\frac{\mathbb{W}_3}{\mathbb{W}_1 \mathbb{W}_2})$ , 22
- $\tilde{L}_0$ , 9
- $\mathcal{O}(C), \mathcal{O}_C$ , 7
- $\tilde{\mathcal{S}}_{q_\bullet} \phi$ , 24
- $\mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} C, \mathcal{S}_{q_\bullet} \mathfrak{X}$ , 23
- $T_\phi$ , 31
- $\mathcal{T}_{\mathfrak{X}}^*(\mathbb{W}_\bullet)$ , the space of conformal blocks, 16
- $\mathcal{U}(\rho), \mathcal{U}_0(\rho)$ , 11
- $\mathcal{U}_\varrho(\eta)$ , 14
- $\mathcal{V}_C^{\leq n}, \mathcal{V}_C$ , 14
- $\mathbb{W}'$ , 10
- $\mathbb{W}^{\leq n}$ , 11
- $\mathbb{W}_\bullet = \mathbb{W}_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbb{W}_N, w_\bullet = w_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes w_N$ , 15
- $\overline{\mathbb{W}} = (\mathbb{W}')^*$ , the algebraic completion, 10
- $\mathbb{W}_s, \mathbb{W}(n)$ , 9
- $\mathbb{W}_{(s)}, \mathbb{W}(n)$ , 9
- $\mathfrak{X}^*$ , the conjugate of  $\mathfrak{X}$ , 28
- $\mathfrak{X} \#_q \mathfrak{X}^* = \mathcal{S}_q(\mathfrak{X} \sqcup \mathfrak{X}^*)$ , 30
- $Y'(v, z) = Y(e^{zL_1}(-z^{-2})^{L_0} v, z^{-1}), Y'(v)_n$ , 10
- $Y(v)_n$ , 8
- $\mathcal{Y}^*, \mathcal{Y}^c$ , 50
- $\mathcal{Y}^\dagger$ , 50
- $\Gamma_{\mathbb{W}}$ , 50
- $\omega_C$ , 8
- $\omega_{\mathbb{W}, \mathfrak{P}}$ , the basic conformal block, 40
- $\phi \#_q \psi^* = \mathcal{S}_q(\phi \otimes \psi^*)$ , 30
- $\phi^*$ , the complex conjugate of the conformal block  $\phi$ , 28
- $\varrho(\eta|\mu)$ , 13
- $\vartheta_\gamma(z) = (\gamma + z)^{-1} - \gamma^{-1}$ , 14

## References

- [AN03] Abe, T., & Nagatomo, K. Finiteness of conformal blocks over compact Riemann surfaces. *Osaka J. Math.* 40 (2003), 375–39
- [BDH17] Bartels, A., Douglas, C. L., & Henriques, A. (2017). Conformal nets II: Conformal blocks. *Communications in Mathematical Physics*, 354, 393–458.
- [BDM02] Barron, K., Dong, C., & Mason, G. (2002). Twisted sectors for tensor product vertex operator algebras associated to permutation groups. *Communications in mathematical physics*, 227, 349–384.
- [Bel12] Belkale, P. (2012). Unitarity of the KZ/Hitchin connection on conformal blocks in genus 0 for arbitrary Lie algebras. *Journal de mathématiques pures et appliquées*, 98(4), 367–389.
- [CGGH23] Carpi, S., Gaudio, T., Giorgetti, L., & Hillier, R. (2023). Haploid algebras in  $C^*$ -tensor categories and the Schellekens list. *Communications in Mathematical Physics*, 1–44.
- [CGH23] Carpi, S., Gaudio, T., & Hillier, R. (2023). From vertex operator superalgebras to graded-local conformal nets and back. *arXiv preprint arXiv:2304.14263*.
- [CKLW18] Carpi, S., Kawahigashi, Y., Longo, R. and Weiner, M., 2018. From vertex operator algebras to conformal nets and back (Vol. 254, No. 1213). *Memoirs of the American Mathematical Society*
- [CKM17] Creutzig, T., Kanade, S., & McRae, R. (2017). Tensor categories for vertex operator superalgebra extensions. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1705.05017*.
- [CM16] Carnahan, S., & Miyamoto, M. (2016). Regularity of fixed-point vertex operator subalgebras. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1603.05645*.
- [CT23] Carpi, S., & Tomassini, L. (2023). Energy bounds for vertex operator algebra extensions. *Letters in Mathematical Physics*, 113(3), 59.
- [CWX] S. Carpi, M. Weiner and F. Xu. From vertex operator algebra modules to representations of conformal nets. In preparation
- [Con94] A. Connes. Noncommutative geometry. Academic Press Inc., San Diego, CA, 1994.
- [DL14] Dong, C. and Lin, X., 2014. Unitary vertex operator algebras. *Journal of algebra*, 397, pp.252–27
- [DLM97] Dong, C., Li, H., & Mason, G. (1997). Regularity of Rational Vertex Operator Algebras. *Advances in Mathematics*, 132(1), 148–166.
- [DLM98] Dong, C., Li, H., & Mason, G. (1998). Twisted representations of vertex operator algebras. *Mathematische Annalen*, 3(310), 571–600.
- [DLM00] Dong, C., Li, H., & Mason, G. (2000). Modular-Invariance of Trace Functions in Orbifold Theory and Generalized Moonshine. *Communications in Mathematical Physics*, 214, 1–56.
- [DGT23] Damiolini, C., Gibney, A., and Tarasca, N.. On Factorization and vector bundles of conformal blocks from vertex algebras. To appear in *Annales scientifiques de l'École normale supérieure*.
- [DL96] Dong, C., & Lepowsky, J. (1996). The algebraic structure of relative twisted vertex operators. *Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra*, 110(3), 259–295.
- [DL12] Dong, C., & Lepowsky, J. (2012). Generalized vertex algebras and relative vertex operators (Vol. 112). Springer Science & Business Media.
- [DNR21] Dong, C., Ng, S. H., & Ren, L. (2021). Orbifolds and minimal modular extensions. *arXiv preprint arXiv:2108.05225*.
- [DRX17] Dong, C., Ren, L., & Xu, F. (2017). On orbifold theory. *Advances in Mathematics*, 321, 1–30.
- [FB04] E. Frenkel and D. Ben-Zvi, *Vertex Algebras And Algebraic Curves*, *Mathematical Surveys And Monographs* 88, second edition (American Mathematical Society, 2004).
- [FHL93] Frenkel, I., Huang, Y. Z., & Lepowsky, J. (1993). On axiomatic approaches to vertex operator algebras and modules (Vol. 494). American Mathematical Soc..
- [Gui19a] Gui, B., 2019. Unitarity of the modular tensor categories associated to unitary vertex operator algebras, I, *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 366(1), pp.333–396.
- [Gui19b] Gui, B., 2019. Unitarity of the modular tensor categories associated to unitary vertex operator algebras, II. *Communications in Mathematical Physics*, 372(3), pp.893–950.
- [Gui19c] Gui, B. (2019). Energy bounds condition for intertwining operators of types  $B$ ,  $C$ , and  $G_2$  unitary

affine vertex operator algebras. *Transactions of the American Mathematical Society*, 372(10), 7371-7424.

- [Gui20] Gui, B. (2020). Unbounded field operators in categorical extensions of conformal nets. arXiv preprint arXiv:2001.03095.
- [Gui21] Gui, B. (2021). Sewing and Propagation of Conformal Blocks. arXiv preprint arXiv:2110.04774.
- [Gui22] Gui, B. (2022). Q-systems and extensions of completely unitary vertex operator algebras. *International Mathematics Research Notices*, 2022(10), 7550-7614.
- [Gui23a] B. Gui, Convergence of Sewing Conformal Blocks, to appear in *Communications in Contemporary Mathematics*. arXiv:2011.07450
- [Gui23b] B. Gui, Lectures on vertex operator algebras and conformal blocks. arXiv:2305.03822v1, 2023
- [HL95a] Huang, Y.Z. and Lepowsky, J., 1995. A theory of tensor products for module categories for a vertex operator algebra, I. *Selecta Mathematica*, 1(4), p.699.
- [HL95b] Huang, Y.Z. and Lepowsky, J., 1995. A theory of tensor products for module categories for a vertex operator algebra, II. *Selecta Mathematica*, 1(4), p.757.
- [HL95c] Huang, Y.Z. and Lepowsky, J., 1995. A theory of tensor products for module categories for a vertex operator algebra, III. *Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra*, 100(1-3), pp.141-171.
- [Hua95] Huang, Y.Z., 1995. A theory of tensor products for module categories for a vertex operator algebra, IV. *Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra*, 100(1-3), pp.173-216.
- [Hua97] Huang, Y.Z., 1997. Two-dimensional conformal geometry and vertex operator algebras (Vol. 148). Springer Science & Business Media.
- [Hua05] Huang, Y. Z. (2005). Differential equations and intertwining operators. *Communications in Contemporary Mathematics*, 7(03), 375-400.
- [Hua08] Huang, Y. Z. (2008). Rigidity and modularity of vertex tensor categories. *Communications in contemporary mathematics*, 10(supp01), 871-911.
- [Hua09] Huang, Y. Z. (2009). Cofiniteness conditions, projective covers and the logarithmic tensor product theory. *Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra*, 213(4), 458-475.
- [Hua10] Huang, Y. Z. (2010). Generalized twisted modules associated to general automorphisms of a vertex operator algebra. *Communications in Mathematical Physics*, 298(1), 265-292.
- [Hua18] Huang, Y. Z. (2018). Intertwining operators among twisted modules associated to not-necessarily-commuting automorphisms. *Journal of Algebra*, 493, 346-380.
- [Jon83] Jones, V. F. (1983). Index for subfactors. *Inventiones mathematicae*, 72(1), 1-25.
- [KO02] Kirillov Jr, A., & Ostrik, V. (2002). On a q-analogue of the McKay correspondence and the ADE classification of  $sl_2$  conformal field theories. *Advances in Mathematics*, 171(2), 183-227.
- [Kir98] Kirillov, A. A. (1998). On inner product in modular tensor categories II: Inner product on conformal blocks and affine inner product identities. *Advances in Theoretical and Mathematical Physics*, 2(1), 155-180.
- [Kir02] Kirillov, Jr, A. (2002). Modular categories and orbifold models. *Communications in mathematical physics*, 229, 309-335.
- [Kir04] Kirillov Jr, A. (2004). On  $G$ -equivariant modular categories. arXiv preprint math/0401119.
- [Lam23] Lam, C. H. (2023). Unitary forms for holomorphic vertex operator algebras of central charge 24. *Letters in Mathematical Physics*, 113(2), 28.
- [Li94] Li, H. S. (1994). Symmetric invariant bilinear forms on vertex operator algebras. *Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra*, 96(3), 279-297.
- [Loo09] Looijenga, E. (2009). Unitarity of  $SL(2)$ -conformal blocks in genus zero. *Journal of Geometry and Physics*, 59(5), 654-662.
- [Loo21] Looijenga, E. (2021). Conformal blocks and the cohomology of configuration spaces of curves. arXiv preprint arXiv:2112.03169.
- [MN01] Mason, G., & Ng, S. H. (2001). Group cohomology and gauge equivalence of some twisted quantum doubles. *Transactions of the American Mathematical Society*, 353(9), 3465-3509.
- [McR21] McRae, R. (2021). Twisted modules and  $G$ -equivariantization in logarithmic conformal field theory. *Communications in Mathematical Physics*, 383(3), 1939-2019.

- [Miy15] Miyamoto, M. (2015). C 2-cofiniteness of cyclic-orbifold models. *Communications in Mathematical Physics*, 335(3), 1279-1286.
- [NT05] Nagatomo, K., & Tsuchiya, A. (2005). Conformal field theories associated to regular chiral vertex operator algebras, I: Theories over the projective line.
- [Ram09] Ramadas, T. R. (2009). The "Harder-Narasimhan trace" and unitarity of the KZ/Hitchin connection: genus 0. *Annals of mathematics*, 1-39.
- [Sau83] Sauvageot, J. L. (1983). Sur le produit tensoriel relatif d'espaces de Hilbert. *Journal of Operator Theory*, 237-252.
- [Seg04] Graeme Segal. The definition of conformal field theory. In *Topology, geometry and quantum field theory. Proceedings of the 2002 Oxford symposium in honour of the 60th birthday of Graeme Segal*, Oxford, UK, June 24–29, 2002, pages 421–577. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2004.
- [Tak] Takesaki, M. (2003). *Theory of operator algebras II* (Vol. 125). Berlin: Springer.
- [Ten19a] Tener, J. E. (2019). Geometric realization of algebraic conformal field theories. *Advances in Mathematics*, 349, 488-563.
- [Ten19b] Tener, J. E. (2019). Representation theory in chiral conformal field theory: from fields to observables. *Selecta Mathematica*, 25(5), 76.
- [Ten19c] Tener, J. E. (2019). Fusion and positivity in chiral conformal field theory. *arXiv preprint arXiv:1910.08257*.
- [vEMS20] van Ekeren, J., Möller, S., & Scheithauer, N. R. (2020). Construction and classification of holomorphic vertex operator algebras. *Journal für die reine und angewandte Mathematik (Crelles Journal)*, 2020(759), 61-99.
- [Was98] Wassermann, A. (1998). Operator algebras and conformal field theory III. Fusion of positive energy representations of  $LSU(N)$  using bounded operators. *arXiv preprint math/9806031*.
- [Zhu94] Zhu, Y. (1994). Global vertex operators on Riemann surfaces. *Comm. Math. Phys.*, 165(3):485-531, 1994.
- [Zhu96] Zhu, Y. (1996). Modular invariance of characters of vertex operator algebras. *Journal of the American Mathematical Society*, 9(1), 237-302.

YAU MATHEMATICAL SCIENCES CENTER, TSINGHUA UNIVERSITY, BEIJING, CHINA.

*E-mail:* binguimath@gmail.com      bingui@tsinghua.edu.cn